

ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH

ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH

Editor

Prof. Jibin Varghese

**MARK PUBLISHERS
JAIPUR**

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Environmental Health

Editor : Prof. Jibin Varghese

Edition : 2020

ISBN : 978-81-89472-33-7

Published by:

Mark Publishers

Jaipur 302 021

Exclusive Distributor:

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,

Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,

Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by:

In-house

Preface

The relationship between human health and the environment is one that has long been understood, yet in today's rapidly changing world, the urgency of addressing this connection has never been clearer. From air quality and water pollution to climate change and ecosystem destruction, the environmental factors that influence our health are complex, intertwined, and increasingly difficult to ignore. *Environmental Health* is an exploration of these critical connections, aiming to educate, inform, and inspire action for the protection of both our environment and our well-being.

This book aims to provide a comprehensive understanding of environmental health, from the basic principles of how environmental factors affect human health to the most pressing issues facing communities today. It draws on scientific research, case studies, and global perspectives to provide a well-rounded view of how human activity has altered the natural world, and how these changes in turn impact everything from public health to biodiversity.

The content is structured to guide readers through the key areas of environmental health, starting with an overview of the foundational concepts—such as pollution, environmental toxins, and the social determinants of health—before diving into more specific topics like climate change, food security, and the health impacts of urbanization. We also explore the role of policy, sustainable development, and community efforts in mitigating the risks to health posed by environmental degradation.

In these pages, you will find an exploration of how our daily choices, industries, and governments impact the environment,

and, by extension, our health. Whether you're an environmentalist, a health professional, a student, or simply someone concerned about the future, this book is designed to equip you with the knowledge needed to understand these pressing issues and take action—individually and collectively—to safeguard our planet and our health.

Through research, insight, and real-world examples, *Environmental Health* seeks not only to highlight the challenges but also to explore the solutions that can lead us toward a healthier, more sustainable future. By bringing attention to these complex issues and their interconnections, this book encourages readers to think critically about how we can all contribute to a more balanced, health-conscious world.

In closing, I hope *Environmental Health* serves as a call to action—one that will empower you to recognize the critical link between environmental stewardship and public health, and inspire you to become part of the global movement toward environmental sustainability and health equity. Together, we can build a healthier future for ourselves and generations to come.

—Editor

Contents

<i>Preface</i>	<i>iii</i>
1. Noise & Effect of Noise Pollution <i>Pro. Jibin Varghese</i>	1
2. Housing: Characteristics of Good Housing <i>Prof. Jibin Varghese</i>	5
3. Noise Control Measure <i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	9
4. Ventilation & Types of Ventilation <i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	13
5. Control of Air Pollution & Use of Safety Measures <i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	17
6. Composition of Water <i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	21
7. Purification of Water <i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghra</i>	25
8. Source of Water <i>Ms. Pooja Patel</i>	29
9. Environmental Health <i>Ms. Pooja Patel</i>	33
10. Humidification <i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	37
11. Fluid Electolytes <i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	44
12. Hypovolemia <i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	53

13. Geriatric	60
<i>Kanan Patel</i>	
14. Quality Assurance in Nursing	113
<i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	
15. Alternative Modalities of Care	140
<i>Ms. Jinal Patel</i>	
16. International Health Agencies	182
<i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	
17. Health Scheme	190
<i>Ms. Khuboo</i>	
18. Concept of Primary Health Care	206
<i>Ms. Khusboo</i>	
19. Nutritional Disorders	215
<i>Renu Susan Varghese</i>	
20. Nutritional Needs	225
<i>Kanan Patel</i>	

1

Noise & Effect of Noise Pollution

Pro. Jibin Varghese¹

Noise refers to any unwanted or disruptive sound that interferes with normal activities, such as sleeping, conversation, or enjoyment. **Noise pollution** is defined as excessive or harmful levels of noise that can have detrimental effects on human health, well-being, and the environment.

1. Sources of Noise Pollution

- **Traffic:** Cars, trucks, buses, and motorcycles produce significant noise, especially in urban areas.
- **Industrial Activities:** Factories, construction sites, and other industrial operations generate loud noises from machinery and equipment.
- **Commercial Activities:** Noise from bars, restaurants, shops, and other businesses.
- **Residential Areas:** Noise from loud music, parties, and home appliances.
- **Air Traffic:** Aircraft take-offs, landings, and flyovers contribute to noise pollution, especially near airports.
- **Natural Sources:** Thunderstorms, earthquakes, and volcanic eruptions can also contribute to noise.

2. Effects of Noise Pollution

A. Health Effects

1. Hearing Loss:

-
1. Principal, Aarihant Institute of Nursing, Swarnim Startup and Innovation University

ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH

ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH

Editor

Prof. Jibin Varghese

**MARK PUBLISHERS
JAIPUR**

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Environmental Health

Editor : Prof. Jibin Varghese

Edition : 2020

ISBN : 978-81-89472-33-7

Published by:

Mark Publishers

Jaipur 302 021

Exclusive Distributor:

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,

Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,

Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by:

In-house

Preface

The relationship between human health and the environment is one that has long been understood, yet in today's rapidly changing world, the urgency of addressing this connection has never been clearer. From air quality and water pollution to climate change and ecosystem destruction, the environmental factors that influence our health are complex, intertwined, and increasingly difficult to ignore. *Environmental Health* is an exploration of these critical connections, aiming to educate, inform, and inspire action for the protection of both our environment and our well-being.

This book aims to provide a comprehensive understanding of environmental health, from the basic principles of how environmental factors affect human health to the most pressing issues facing communities today. It draws on scientific research, case studies, and global perspectives to provide a well-rounded view of how human activity has altered the natural world, and how these changes in turn impact everything from public health to biodiversity.

The content is structured to guide readers through the key areas of environmental health, starting with an overview of the foundational concepts—such as pollution, environmental toxins, and the social determinants of health—before diving into more specific topics like climate change, food security, and the health impacts of urbanization. We also explore the role of policy, sustainable development, and community efforts in mitigating the risks to health posed by environmental degradation.

In these pages, you will find an exploration of how our daily choices, industries, and governments impact the environment,

and, by extension, our health. Whether you're an environmentalist, a health professional, a student, or simply someone concerned about the future, this book is designed to equip you with the knowledge needed to understand these pressing issues and take action—individually and collectively—to safeguard our planet and our health.

Through research, insight, and real-world examples, *Environmental Health* seeks not only to highlight the challenges but also to explore the solutions that can lead us toward a healthier, more sustainable future. By bringing attention to these complex issues and their interconnections, this book encourages readers to think critically about how we can all contribute to a more balanced, health-conscious world.

In closing, I hope *Environmental Health* serves as a call to action—one that will empower you to recognize the critical link between environmental stewardship and public health, and inspire you to become part of the global movement toward environmental sustainability and health equity. Together, we can build a healthier future for ourselves and generations to come.

—Editor

Contents

<i>Preface</i>	<i>iii</i>
1. Noise & Effect of Noise Pollution <i>Pro. Jibin Varghese</i>	1
2. Housing: Characteristics of Good Housing <i>Prof. Jibin Varghese</i>	5
3. Noise Control Measure <i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	9
4. Ventilation & Types of Ventilation <i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	13
5. Control of Air Pollution & Use of Safety Measures <i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	17
6. Composition of Water <i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	21
7. Purification of Water <i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghra</i>	25
8. Source of Water <i>Ms. Pooja Patel</i>	29
9. Environmental Health <i>Ms. Pooja Patel</i>	33
10. Humidification <i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	37
11. Fluid Electolytes <i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	44
12. Hypovolemia <i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	53

13. Geriatric	60
<i>Kanan Patel</i>	
14. Quality Assurance in Nursing	113
<i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	
15. Alternative Modalities of Care	140
<i>Ms. Jinal Patel</i>	
16. International Health Agencies	182
<i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	
17. Health Scheme	190
<i>Ms. Khuboo</i>	
18. Concept of Primary Health Care	206
<i>Ms. Khusboo</i>	
19. Nutritional Disorders	215
<i>Renu Susan Varghese</i>	
20. Nutritional Needs	225
<i>Kanan Patel</i>	

2

Housing: Characteristics of Good Housing

Prof. Jibin Varghese¹

Good housing is essential for ensuring the well-being, safety, and comfort of its inhabitants. It encompasses various characteristics that contribute to a healthy, functional, and aesthetically pleasing living environment. Here's a detailed look at the key characteristics of good housing:

1. Location and Accessibility

- **Proximity to Amenities:** Good housing should be close to essential services such as schools, healthcare facilities, transportation links, shopping centers, and recreational areas.
- **Safe Neighborhood:** The area should be safe, with low crime rates and good community cohesion.

2. Structural Integrity

- **Durability:** The building should be constructed with high-quality materials and adhere to building codes and standards to ensure its longevity and resistance to environmental factors.
- **Foundation and Roofing:** Proper foundation and roofing are crucial to protect against water damage, pests, and structural failure.

3. Space and Layout

- **Adequate Space:** There should be enough space for all residents to live comfortably, including adequate living areas, bedrooms, and storage.

1. Principal, Aarohant Institute of Nursing

ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH

ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH

Editor

Prof. Jibin Varghese

**MARK PUBLISHERS
JAIPUR**

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Environmental Health

Editor : Prof. Jibin Varghese

Edition : 2020

ISBN : 978-81-89472-33-7

Published by:

Mark Publishers

Jaipur 302 021

Exclusive Distributor:

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,

Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,

Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by:

In-house

Preface

The relationship between human health and the environment is one that has long been understood, yet in today's rapidly changing world, the urgency of addressing this connection has never been clearer. From air quality and water pollution to climate change and ecosystem destruction, the environmental factors that influence our health are complex, intertwined, and increasingly difficult to ignore. *Environmental Health* is an exploration of these critical connections, aiming to educate, inform, and inspire action for the protection of both our environment and our well-being.

This book aims to provide a comprehensive understanding of environmental health, from the basic principles of how environmental factors affect human health to the most pressing issues facing communities today. It draws on scientific research, case studies, and global perspectives to provide a well-rounded view of how human activity has altered the natural world, and how these changes in turn impact everything from public health to biodiversity.

The content is structured to guide readers through the key areas of environmental health, starting with an overview of the foundational concepts—such as pollution, environmental toxins, and the social determinants of health—before diving into more specific topics like climate change, food security, and the health impacts of urbanization. We also explore the role of policy, sustainable development, and community efforts in mitigating the risks to health posed by environmental degradation.

In these pages, you will find an exploration of how our daily choices, industries, and governments impact the environment,

and, by extension, our health. Whether you're an environmentalist, a health professional, a student, or simply someone concerned about the future, this book is designed to equip you with the knowledge needed to understand these pressing issues and take action—individually and collectively—to safeguard our planet and our health.

Through research, insight, and real-world examples, *Environmental Health* seeks not only to highlight the challenges but also to explore the solutions that can lead us toward a healthier, more sustainable future. By bringing attention to these complex issues and their interconnections, this book encourages readers to think critically about how we can all contribute to a more balanced, health-conscious world.

In closing, I hope *Environmental Health* serves as a call to action—one that will empower you to recognize the critical link between environmental stewardship and public health, and inspire you to become part of the global movement toward environmental sustainability and health equity. Together, we can build a healthier future for ourselves and generations to come.

—Editor

Contents

<i>Preface</i>	<i>iii</i>
1. Noise & Effect of Noise Pollution <i>Pro. Jibin Varghese</i>	1
2. Housing: Characteristics of Good Housing <i>Prof. Jibin Varghese</i>	5
3. Noise Control Measure <i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	9
4. Ventilation & Types of Ventilation <i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	13
5. Control of Air Pollution & Use of Safety Measures <i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	17
6. Composition of Water <i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	21
7. Purification of Water <i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghra</i>	25
8. Source of Water <i>Ms. Pooja Patel</i>	29
9. Environmental Health <i>Ms. Pooja Patel</i>	33
10. Humidification <i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	37
11. Fluid Electolytes <i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	44
12. Hypovolemia <i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	53

13. Geriatric	60
<i>Kanan Patel</i>	
14. Quality Assurance in Nursing	113
<i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	
15. Alternative Modalities of Care	140
<i>Ms. Jinal Patel</i>	
16. International Health Agencies	182
<i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	
17. Health Scheme	190
<i>Ms. Khuboo</i>	
18. Concept of Primary Health Care	206
<i>Ms. Khusboo</i>	
19. Nutritional Disorders	215
<i>Renu Susan Varghese</i>	
20. Nutritional Needs	225
<i>Kanan Patel</i>	

3

Noise Control Measure

Ms. Sejal Patel¹

Noise control measures are strategies and technologies designed to reduce or manage noise levels in various environments. These measures are essential for improving indoor and outdoor sound quality, protecting health, and minimizing disturbances. Here's a detailed look at effective noise control measures:

1. Engineering Control

**A. Source Control

1. **Modify Equipment:** Design or retrofit machinery and equipment to reduce noise generation. Examples include quieter engines, mufflers, and vibration isolation.
2. **Low-Noise Machinery:** Use equipment specifically designed to operate quietly, such as low-noise compressors and fans.
3. **Maintenance:** Regularly maintain and repair machinery to prevent noise from deteriorating due to wear and tear.

**B. Path Control

1. **Noise Barriers:** Construct barriers or walls around noisy sources (e.g., highways, industrial sites) to block or deflect sound. These can be made from materials like concrete, metal, or earth mounds.
2. **Acoustic Enclosures:** Enclose noisy equipment or processes within soundproofed structures or rooms to contain noise.

1. Nursing Tutor, Aarohant Institute of Nursing

ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH

ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH

Editor

Prof. Jibin Varghese

**MARK PUBLISHERS
JAIPUR**

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Environmental Health

Editor : Prof. Jibin Varghese

Edition : 2020

ISBN : 978-81-89472-33-7

Published by:

Mark Publishers

Jaipur 302 021

Exclusive Distributor:

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,

Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,

Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by:

In-house

Preface

The relationship between human health and the environment is one that has long been understood, yet in today's rapidly changing world, the urgency of addressing this connection has never been clearer. From air quality and water pollution to climate change and ecosystem destruction, the environmental factors that influence our health are complex, intertwined, and increasingly difficult to ignore. *Environmental Health* is an exploration of these critical connections, aiming to educate, inform, and inspire action for the protection of both our environment and our well-being.

This book aims to provide a comprehensive understanding of environmental health, from the basic principles of how environmental factors affect human health to the most pressing issues facing communities today. It draws on scientific research, case studies, and global perspectives to provide a well-rounded view of how human activity has altered the natural world, and how these changes in turn impact everything from public health to biodiversity.

The content is structured to guide readers through the key areas of environmental health, starting with an overview of the foundational concepts—such as pollution, environmental toxins, and the social determinants of health—before diving into more specific topics like climate change, food security, and the health impacts of urbanization. We also explore the role of policy, sustainable development, and community efforts in mitigating the risks to health posed by environmental degradation.

In these pages, you will find an exploration of how our daily choices, industries, and governments impact the environment,

and, by extension, our health. Whether you're an environmentalist, a health professional, a student, or simply someone concerned about the future, this book is designed to equip you with the knowledge needed to understand these pressing issues and take action—individually and collectively—to safeguard our planet and our health.

Through research, insight, and real-world examples, *Environmental Health* seeks not only to highlight the challenges but also to explore the solutions that can lead us toward a healthier, more sustainable future. By bringing attention to these complex issues and their interconnections, this book encourages readers to think critically about how we can all contribute to a more balanced, health-conscious world.

In closing, I hope *Environmental Health* serves as a call to action—one that will empower you to recognize the critical link between environmental stewardship and public health, and inspire you to become part of the global movement toward environmental sustainability and health equity. Together, we can build a healthier future for ourselves and generations to come.

—Editor

Contents

<i>Preface</i>	<i>iii</i>
1. Noise & Effect of Noise Pollution <i>Pro. Jibin Varghese</i>	1
2. Housing: Characteristics of Good Housing <i>Prof. Jibin Varghese</i>	5
3. Noise Control Measure <i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	9
4. Ventilation & Types of Ventilation <i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	13
5. Control of Air Pollution & Use of Safety Measures <i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	17
6. Composition of Water <i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	21
7. Purification of Water <i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghra</i>	25
8. Source of Water <i>Ms. Pooja Patel</i>	29
9. Environmental Health <i>Ms. Pooja Patel</i>	33
10. Humidification <i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	37
11. Fluid Electolytes <i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	44
12. Hypovolemia <i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	53

13. Geriatric	60
<i>Kanan Patel</i>	
14. Quality Assurance in Nursing	113
<i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	
15. Alternative Modalities of Care	140
<i>Ms. Jinal Patel</i>	
16. International Health Agencies	182
<i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	
17. Health Scheme	190
<i>Ms. Khuboo</i>	
18. Concept of Primary Health Care	206
<i>Ms. Khusboo</i>	
19. Nutritional Disorders	215
<i>Renu Susan Varghese</i>	
20. Nutritional Needs	225
<i>Kanan Patel</i>	

4

Ventilation & Types of Ventilation

Ms. Sejal Patel¹

Ventilation is a crucial aspect of building design and operation, as it helps to ensure that indoor air quality remains healthy and comfortable. Proper ventilation helps remove indoor air pollutants, control humidity levels, and provide fresh air to occupants. There are several types of ventilation systems and strategies, each with its own benefits and applications

1. Types of Ventilation

Natural Ventilation

- **Description:** Utilizes natural forces like wind and thermal buoyancy to circulate air without mechanical assistance.
- **Components:**
 - ♦ **Windows:** Operable windows that can be opened to allow fresh air in and let stale air out.
 - ♦ **Ventilation Openings:** Includes vents, skylights, and air bricks.
 - ♦ **Stack Effect:** Warm air rises and exits through higher openings, pulling cooler air in through lower openings.
- **Advantages:**
 - ♦ Low energy costs.
 - ♦ Reduces the need for mechanical systems.
 - ♦ Promotes a natural airflow.
- **Disadvantages:**

1. Nursing Tutor, Aarohant Institute of Nursing

ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH

ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH

Editor

Prof. Jibin Varghese

**MARK PUBLISHERS
JAIPUR**

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Environmental Health

Editor : Prof. Jibin Varghese

Edition : 2020

ISBN : 978-81-89472-33-7

Published by:

Mark Publishers

Jaipur 302 021

Exclusive Distributor:

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,

Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,

Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by:

In-house

Preface

The relationship between human health and the environment is one that has long been understood, yet in today's rapidly changing world, the urgency of addressing this connection has never been clearer. From air quality and water pollution to climate change and ecosystem destruction, the environmental factors that influence our health are complex, intertwined, and increasingly difficult to ignore. *Environmental Health* is an exploration of these critical connections, aiming to educate, inform, and inspire action for the protection of both our environment and our well-being.

This book aims to provide a comprehensive understanding of environmental health, from the basic principles of how environmental factors affect human health to the most pressing issues facing communities today. It draws on scientific research, case studies, and global perspectives to provide a well-rounded view of how human activity has altered the natural world, and how these changes in turn impact everything from public health to biodiversity.

The content is structured to guide readers through the key areas of environmental health, starting with an overview of the foundational concepts—such as pollution, environmental toxins, and the social determinants of health—before diving into more specific topics like climate change, food security, and the health impacts of urbanization. We also explore the role of policy, sustainable development, and community efforts in mitigating the risks to health posed by environmental degradation.

In these pages, you will find an exploration of how our daily choices, industries, and governments impact the environment,

and, by extension, our health. Whether you're an environmentalist, a health professional, a student, or simply someone concerned about the future, this book is designed to equip you with the knowledge needed to understand these pressing issues and take action—individually and collectively—to safeguard our planet and our health.

Through research, insight, and real-world examples, *Environmental Health* seeks not only to highlight the challenges but also to explore the solutions that can lead us toward a healthier, more sustainable future. By bringing attention to these complex issues and their interconnections, this book encourages readers to think critically about how we can all contribute to a more balanced, health-conscious world.

In closing, I hope *Environmental Health* serves as a call to action—one that will empower you to recognize the critical link between environmental stewardship and public health, and inspire you to become part of the global movement toward environmental sustainability and health equity. Together, we can build a healthier future for ourselves and generations to come.

—Editor

Contents

<i>Preface</i>	<i>iii</i>
1. Noise & Effect of Noise Pollution	1
<i>Pro. Jibin Varghese</i>	
2. Housing: Characteristics of Good Housing	5
<i>Prof. Jibin Varghese</i>	
3. Noise Control Measure	9
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
4. Ventilation & Types of Ventilation	13
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
5. Control of Air Pollution & Use of Safety Measures	17
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	
6. Composition of Water	21
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	
7. Purification of Water	25
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghra</i>	
8. Source of Water	29
<i>Ms. Pooja Patel</i>	
9. Environmental Health	33
<i>Ms. Pooja Patel</i>	
10. Humidification	37
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
11. Fluid Electolytes	44
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
12. Hypovolemia	53
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	

13. Geriatric	60
<i>Kanan Patel</i>	
14. Quality Assurance in Nursing	113
<i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	
15. Alternative Modalities of Care	140
<i>Ms. Jinal Patel</i>	
16. International Health Agencies	182
<i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	
17. Health Scheme	190
<i>Ms. Khuboo</i>	
18. Concept of Primary Health Care	206
<i>Ms. Khusboo</i>	
19. Nutritional Disorders	215
<i>Renu Susan Varghese</i>	
20. Nutritional Needs	225
<i>Kanan Patel</i>	

5

Control of Air Pollution & Use of Safety Measures

Ms. Pinal Ghoghara¹

Control of Air Pollution & Use of Safety Measures involves implementing strategies and technologies to reduce emissions of harmful pollutants and protect human health and the environment. Effective control measures and safety practices can significantly improve air quality and mitigate the impacts of air pollution. Here's a detailed overview of various approaches to controlling air pollution and using safety measures:

1. Regulatory and Policy Measures

a. **Air Quality Standards:**

- **National Ambient Air Quality Standards (NAAQS):** Establish limits for concentrations of pollutants such as particulate matter, ozone, nitrogen dioxide, sulfur dioxide, carbon monoxide, and lead.
- **Emission Standards:** Set limits on the amount of pollutants that can be emitted from various sources, including vehicles, industrial facilities, and power plants.

b. **Monitoring and Enforcement:**

- **Air Quality Monitoring Networks:** Use sensors and monitoring stations to track pollutant levels and ensure compliance with air quality standards.
- **Regulatory Agencies:** Enforce regulations and standards through agencies like the Environmental Protection

1. Nursing Tutor, Aarohant Institute of Nursing

ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH

ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH

Editor

Prof. Jibin Varghese

**MARK PUBLISHERS
JAIPUR**

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Environmental Health

Editor : Prof. Jibin Varghese

Edition : 2020

ISBN : 978-81-89472-33-7

Published by:

Mark Publishers

Jaipur 302 021

Exclusive Distributor:

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,

Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,

Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by:

In-house

Preface

The relationship between human health and the environment is one that has long been understood, yet in today's rapidly changing world, the urgency of addressing this connection has never been clearer. From air quality and water pollution to climate change and ecosystem destruction, the environmental factors that influence our health are complex, intertwined, and increasingly difficult to ignore. *Environmental Health* is an exploration of these critical connections, aiming to educate, inform, and inspire action for the protection of both our environment and our well-being.

This book aims to provide a comprehensive understanding of environmental health, from the basic principles of how environmental factors affect human health to the most pressing issues facing communities today. It draws on scientific research, case studies, and global perspectives to provide a well-rounded view of how human activity has altered the natural world, and how these changes in turn impact everything from public health to biodiversity.

The content is structured to guide readers through the key areas of environmental health, starting with an overview of the foundational concepts—such as pollution, environmental toxins, and the social determinants of health—before diving into more specific topics like climate change, food security, and the health impacts of urbanization. We also explore the role of policy, sustainable development, and community efforts in mitigating the risks to health posed by environmental degradation.

In these pages, you will find an exploration of how our daily choices, industries, and governments impact the environment,

and, by extension, our health. Whether you're an environmentalist, a health professional, a student, or simply someone concerned about the future, this book is designed to equip you with the knowledge needed to understand these pressing issues and take action—individually and collectively—to safeguard our planet and our health.

Through research, insight, and real-world examples, *Environmental Health* seeks not only to highlight the challenges but also to explore the solutions that can lead us toward a healthier, more sustainable future. By bringing attention to these complex issues and their interconnections, this book encourages readers to think critically about how we can all contribute to a more balanced, health-conscious world.

In closing, I hope *Environmental Health* serves as a call to action—one that will empower you to recognize the critical link between environmental stewardship and public health, and inspire you to become part of the global movement toward environmental sustainability and health equity. Together, we can build a healthier future for ourselves and generations to come.

—Editor

Contents

<i>Preface</i>	<i>iii</i>
1. Noise & Effect of Noise Pollution <i>Pro. Jibin Varghese</i>	1
2. Housing: Characteristics of Good Housing <i>Prof. Jibin Varghese</i>	5
3. Noise Control Measure <i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	9
4. Ventilation & Types of Ventilation <i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	13
5. Control of Air Pollution & Use of Safety Measures <i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	17
6. Composition of Water <i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	21
7. Purification of Water <i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghra</i>	25
8. Source of Water <i>Ms. Pooja Patel</i>	29
9. Environmental Health <i>Ms. Pooja Patel</i>	33
10. Humidification <i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	37
11. Fluid Electolytes <i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	44
12. Hypovolemia <i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	53

13. Geriatric	60
<i>Kanan Patel</i>	
14. Quality Assurance in Nursing	113
<i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	
15. Alternative Modalities of Care	140
<i>Ms. Jinal Patel</i>	
16. International Health Agencies	182
<i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	
17. Health Scheme	190
<i>Ms. Khuboo</i>	
18. Concept of Primary Health Care	206
<i>Ms. Khusboo</i>	
19. Nutritional Disorders	215
<i>Renu Susan Varghese</i>	
20. Nutritional Needs	225
<i>Kanan Patel</i>	

6

Composition of Water

Ms. Pinal Ghoghara¹

Composition of Water refers to the chemical and physical properties of water and the substances dissolved in it. Water is a simple molecule with complex interactions, and its composition can vary depending on its source, environmental conditions, and any substances it comes into contact with. Here's a detailed look at the composition of water:

1. Basic Chemical Composition

a. Molecular Structure

- **Chemical Formula:** H_2O
- **Molecular Structure:** Each water molecule consists of two hydrogen atoms covalently bonded to one oxygen atom. This arrangement gives water its bent molecular shape and contributes to its unique properties.

b. Bonding

- **Polar Covalent Bonds:** The hydrogen and oxygen atoms in a water molecule are connected by polar covalent bonds. This results in a partial negative charge on the oxygen atom and a partial positive charge on the hydrogen atoms.
- **Hydrogen Bonding:** Water molecules form hydrogen bonds with each other, which contributes to its high boiling point, high specific heat, and surface tension.

1. Nursing Tutor, Aarohant Institute of Nursing

ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH

ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH

Editor

Prof. Jibin Varghese

**MARK PUBLISHERS
JAIPUR**

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Environmental Health

Editor : Prof. Jibin Varghese

Edition : 2020

ISBN : 978-81-89472-33-7

Published by:

Mark Publishers

Jaipur 302 021

Exclusive Distributor:

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,

Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,

Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by:

In-house

Preface

The relationship between human health and the environment is one that has long been understood, yet in today's rapidly changing world, the urgency of addressing this connection has never been clearer. From air quality and water pollution to climate change and ecosystem destruction, the environmental factors that influence our health are complex, intertwined, and increasingly difficult to ignore. *Environmental Health* is an exploration of these critical connections, aiming to educate, inform, and inspire action for the protection of both our environment and our well-being.

This book aims to provide a comprehensive understanding of environmental health, from the basic principles of how environmental factors affect human health to the most pressing issues facing communities today. It draws on scientific research, case studies, and global perspectives to provide a well-rounded view of how human activity has altered the natural world, and how these changes in turn impact everything from public health to biodiversity.

The content is structured to guide readers through the key areas of environmental health, starting with an overview of the foundational concepts—such as pollution, environmental toxins, and the social determinants of health—before diving into more specific topics like climate change, food security, and the health impacts of urbanization. We also explore the role of policy, sustainable development, and community efforts in mitigating the risks to health posed by environmental degradation.

In these pages, you will find an exploration of how our daily choices, industries, and governments impact the environment,

and, by extension, our health. Whether you're an environmentalist, a health professional, a student, or simply someone concerned about the future, this book is designed to equip you with the knowledge needed to understand these pressing issues and take action—individually and collectively—to safeguard our planet and our health.

Through research, insight, and real-world examples, *Environmental Health* seeks not only to highlight the challenges but also to explore the solutions that can lead us toward a healthier, more sustainable future. By bringing attention to these complex issues and their interconnections, this book encourages readers to think critically about how we can all contribute to a more balanced, health-conscious world.

In closing, I hope *Environmental Health* serves as a call to action—one that will empower you to recognize the critical link between environmental stewardship and public health, and inspire you to become part of the global movement toward environmental sustainability and health equity. Together, we can build a healthier future for ourselves and generations to come.

—Editor

Contents

<i>Preface</i>	<i>iii</i>
1. Noise & Effect of Noise Pollution <i>Pro. Jibin Varghese</i>	1
2. Housing: Characteristics of Good Housing <i>Prof. Jibin Varghese</i>	5
3. Noise Control Measure <i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	9
4. Ventilation & Types of Ventilation <i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	13
5. Control of Air Pollution & Use of Safety Measures <i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	17
6. Composition of Water <i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	21
7. Purification of Water <i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghra</i>	25
8. Source of Water <i>Ms. Pooja Patel</i>	29
9. Environmental Health <i>Ms. Pooja Patel</i>	33
10. Humidification <i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	37
11. Fluid Electolytes <i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	44
12. Hypovolemia <i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	53

13. Geriatric	60
<i>Kanan Patel</i>	
14. Quality Assurance in Nursing	113
<i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	
15. Alternative Modalities of Care	140
<i>Ms. Jinal Patel</i>	
16. International Health Agencies	182
<i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	
17. Health Scheme	190
<i>Ms. Khuboo</i>	
18. Concept of Primary Health Care	206
<i>Ms. Khusboo</i>	
19. Nutritional Disorders	215
<i>Renu Susan Varghese</i>	
20. Nutritional Needs	225
<i>Kanan Patel</i>	

7

Purification of Water

*Ms. Pinal Ghoghra*¹

Purification of Water is the process of removing contaminants and impurities from water to make it safe for drinking and other uses. This process is crucial for ensuring that water is free from harmful pathogens, chemicals, and particulates. There are various methods for purifying water, each suited to different types of contamination and water sources. Here's a comprehensive overview of the main methods used in water purification:

1. Physical Methods

a. Filtration

- **Sand Filtration:** Uses layers of sand to remove suspended solids and larger particles from water. This method is effective in removing sediment and some microorganisms.
- **Activated Carbon Filtration:** Employs activated carbon to adsorb organic compounds, chlorine, and other chemicals, improving taste and odor.
- **Membrane Filtration:** Includes methods like micro-filtration, ultrafiltration, and nanofiltration, which use semi-permeable membranes to separate particles and contaminants from water.

b. Sedimentation

- **Settling Tanks:** Allows suspended particles to settle at the bottom of a tank or basin, clarifying the water.

1. Nursing tutor, Aarohant Institute of Nursing

ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH

ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH

Editor

Prof. Jibin Varghese

**MARK PUBLISHERS
JAIPUR**

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Environmental Health

Editor : Prof. Jibin Varghese

Edition : 2020

ISBN : 978-81-89472-33-7

Published by:

Mark Publishers

Jaipur 302 021

Exclusive Distributor:

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,

Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,

Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by:

In-house

Preface

The relationship between human health and the environment is one that has long been understood, yet in today's rapidly changing world, the urgency of addressing this connection has never been clearer. From air quality and water pollution to climate change and ecosystem destruction, the environmental factors that influence our health are complex, intertwined, and increasingly difficult to ignore. *Environmental Health* is an exploration of these critical connections, aiming to educate, inform, and inspire action for the protection of both our environment and our well-being.

This book aims to provide a comprehensive understanding of environmental health, from the basic principles of how environmental factors affect human health to the most pressing issues facing communities today. It draws on scientific research, case studies, and global perspectives to provide a well-rounded view of how human activity has altered the natural world, and how these changes in turn impact everything from public health to biodiversity.

The content is structured to guide readers through the key areas of environmental health, starting with an overview of the foundational concepts—such as pollution, environmental toxins, and the social determinants of health—before diving into more specific topics like climate change, food security, and the health impacts of urbanization. We also explore the role of policy, sustainable development, and community efforts in mitigating the risks to health posed by environmental degradation.

In these pages, you will find an exploration of how our daily choices, industries, and governments impact the environment,

and, by extension, our health. Whether you're an environmentalist, a health professional, a student, or simply someone concerned about the future, this book is designed to equip you with the knowledge needed to understand these pressing issues and take action—individually and collectively—to safeguard our planet and our health.

Through research, insight, and real-world examples, *Environmental Health* seeks not only to highlight the challenges but also to explore the solutions that can lead us toward a healthier, more sustainable future. By bringing attention to these complex issues and their interconnections, this book encourages readers to think critically about how we can all contribute to a more balanced, health-conscious world.

In closing, I hope *Environmental Health* serves as a call to action—one that will empower you to recognize the critical link between environmental stewardship and public health, and inspire you to become part of the global movement toward environmental sustainability and health equity. Together, we can build a healthier future for ourselves and generations to come.

—Editor

Contents

<i>Preface</i>	<i>iii</i>
1. Noise & Effect of Noise Pollution <i>Pro. Jibin Varghese</i>	1
2. Housing: Characteristics of Good Housing <i>Prof. Jibin Varghese</i>	5
3. Noise Control Measure <i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	9
4. Ventilation & Types of Ventilation <i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	13
5. Control of Air Pollution & Use of Safety Measures <i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	17
6. Composition of Water <i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	21
7. Purification of Water <i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghra</i>	25
8. Source of Water <i>Ms. Pooja Patel</i>	29
9. Environmental Health <i>Ms. Pooja Patel</i>	33
10. Humidification <i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	37
11. Fluid Electolytes <i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	44
12. Hypovolemia <i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	53

13. Geriatric	60
<i>Kanan Patel</i>	
14. Quality Assurance in Nursing	113
<i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	
15. Alternative Modalities of Care	140
<i>Ms. Jinal Patel</i>	
16. International Health Agencies	182
<i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	
17. Health Scheme	190
<i>Ms. Khuboo</i>	
18. Concept of Primary Health Care	206
<i>Ms. Khusboo</i>	
19. Nutritional Disorders	215
<i>Renu Susan Varghese</i>	
20. Nutritional Needs	225
<i>Kanan Patel</i>	

8

Source of Water

Ms. Pooja Patel¹

Sources of Water refer to the various origins from which water is obtained for different uses, including drinking, irrigation, industrial processes, and recreational activities. Understanding these sources is crucial for managing water resources, ensuring sustainable use, and protecting water quality. Here's an overview of the primary sources of water:

1. Natural Sources of Water

a. Surface Water

- **Rivers and Streams:** Flowing bodies of water that transport freshwater from higher elevations to larger bodies of water, such as lakes and oceans.
- **Lakes and Ponds:** Still bodies of water that store freshwater and provide habitats for wildlife. Lakes are typically larger and deeper than ponds.
- **Reservoirs:** Artificial lakes created by damming rivers to store water for various purposes, including drinking water supply, flood control, and hydro-electric power.

b. Groundwater

- **Aquifers:** Underground layers of water-bearing rock or sediment that store groundwater. Aquifers can be confined (trapped between impermeable layers) or unconfined (directly replenished by surface water).
- **Wells:** Man-made structures drilled into the ground to access groundwater from aquifers. Wells can

1. Nursing Tutor, Aarohant Institute of Nursing

ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH

ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH

Editor

Prof. Jibin Varghese

**MARK PUBLISHERS
JAIPUR**

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Environmental Health

Editor : Prof. Jibin Varghese

Edition : 2020

ISBN : 978-81-89472-33-7

Published by:

Mark Publishers

Jaipur 302 021

Exclusive Distributor:

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,
Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,
Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by:

In-house

Preface

The relationship between human health and the environment is one that has long been understood, yet in today's rapidly changing world, the urgency of addressing this connection has never been clearer. From air quality and water pollution to climate change and ecosystem destruction, the environmental factors that influence our health are complex, intertwined, and increasingly difficult to ignore. *Environmental Health* is an exploration of these critical connections, aiming to educate, inform, and inspire action for the protection of both our environment and our well-being.

This book aims to provide a comprehensive understanding of environmental health, from the basic principles of how environmental factors affect human health to the most pressing issues facing communities today. It draws on scientific research, case studies, and global perspectives to provide a well-rounded view of how human activity has altered the natural world, and how these changes in turn impact everything from public health to biodiversity.

The content is structured to guide readers through the key areas of environmental health, starting with an overview of the foundational concepts—such as pollution, environmental toxins, and the social determinants of health—before diving into more specific topics like climate change, food security, and the health impacts of urbanization. We also explore the role of policy, sustainable development, and community efforts in mitigating the risks to health posed by environmental degradation.

In these pages, you will find an exploration of how our daily choices, industries, and governments impact the environment,

and, by extension, our health. Whether you're an environmentalist, a health professional, a student, or simply someone concerned about the future, this book is designed to equip you with the knowledge needed to understand these pressing issues and take action—individually and collectively—to safeguard our planet and our health.

Through research, insight, and real-world examples, *Environmental Health* seeks not only to highlight the challenges but also to explore the solutions that can lead us toward a healthier, more sustainable future. By bringing attention to these complex issues and their interconnections, this book encourages readers to think critically about how we can all contribute to a more balanced, health-conscious world.

In closing, I hope *Environmental Health* serves as a call to action—one that will empower you to recognize the critical link between environmental stewardship and public health, and inspire you to become part of the global movement toward environmental sustainability and health equity. Together, we can build a healthier future for ourselves and generations to come.

—Editor

Contents

<i>Preface</i>	<i>iii</i>
1. Noise & Effect of Noise Pollution <i>Pro. Jibin Varghese</i>	1
2. Housing: Characteristics of Good Housing <i>Prof. Jibin Varghese</i>	5
3. Noise Control Measure <i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	9
4. Ventilation & Types of Ventilation <i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	13
5. Control of Air Pollution & Use of Safety Measures <i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	17
6. Composition of Water <i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	21
7. Purification of Water <i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghra</i>	25
8. Source of Water <i>Ms. Pooja Patel</i>	29
9. Environmental Health <i>Ms. Pooja Patel</i>	33
10. Humidification <i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	37
11. Fluid Electolytes <i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	44
12. Hypovolemia <i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	53

13. Geriatric	60
<i>Kanan Patel</i>	
14. Quality Assurance in Nursing	113
<i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	
15. Alternative Modalities of Care	140
<i>Ms. Jinal Patel</i>	
16. International Health Agencies	182
<i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	
17. Health Scheme	190
<i>Ms. Khuboo</i>	
18. Concept of Primary Health Care	206
<i>Ms. Khusboo</i>	
19. Nutritional Disorders	215
<i>Renu Susan Varghese</i>	
20. Nutritional Needs	225
<i>Kanan Patel</i>	

9

Environmental Health

Ms. Pooja Patel¹

Environmental Health focuses on the interrelationship between people and their environment, promoting human health and well-being by creating healthy environments. One critical aspect of environmental health is **water** quality and management, as clean water is essential for health. Here's a comprehensive look at environmental health concerning water:

1. Importance of Water in Environmental Health

a. Essential Resource

- **Human Health:** Clean and safe water is fundamental for drinking, sanitation, and hygiene, preventing waterborne diseases and promoting overall health.
- **Ecosystems:** Water supports diverse ecosystems, influencing biodiversity and the health of aquatic and terrestrial environments.

b. Health Impacts

- **Waterborne Diseases:** Contaminated water can carry pathogens causing diseases such as cholera, dysentery, hepatitis A, and typhoid.
- **Chemical Contaminants:** Pollutants like heavy metals, pesticides, and industrial chemicals can have chronic health effects, including cancer and neurological disorders.

2. Key Components of Water Quality

a. Physical Quality

1. Nursing Tutor, Aarohant Institute of Nursing

ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH

ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH

Editor

Prof. Jibin Varghese

**MARK PUBLISHERS
JAIPUR**

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Environmental Health

Editor : Prof. Jibin Varghese

Edition : 2020

ISBN : 978-81-89472-33-7

Published by:

Mark Publishers

Jaipur 302 021

Exclusive Distributor:

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,

Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,

Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by:

In-house

Preface

The relationship between human health and the environment is one that has long been understood, yet in today's rapidly changing world, the urgency of addressing this connection has never been clearer. From air quality and water pollution to climate change and ecosystem destruction, the environmental factors that influence our health are complex, intertwined, and increasingly difficult to ignore. *Environmental Health* is an exploration of these critical connections, aiming to educate, inform, and inspire action for the protection of both our environment and our well-being.

This book aims to provide a comprehensive understanding of environmental health, from the basic principles of how environmental factors affect human health to the most pressing issues facing communities today. It draws on scientific research, case studies, and global perspectives to provide a well-rounded view of how human activity has altered the natural world, and how these changes in turn impact everything from public health to biodiversity.

The content is structured to guide readers through the key areas of environmental health, starting with an overview of the foundational concepts—such as pollution, environmental toxins, and the social determinants of health—before diving into more specific topics like climate change, food security, and the health impacts of urbanization. We also explore the role of policy, sustainable development, and community efforts in mitigating the risks to health posed by environmental degradation.

In these pages, you will find an exploration of how our daily choices, industries, and governments impact the environment,

and, by extension, our health. Whether you're an environmentalist, a health professional, a student, or simply someone concerned about the future, this book is designed to equip you with the knowledge needed to understand these pressing issues and take action—individually and collectively—to safeguard our planet and our health.

Through research, insight, and real-world examples, *Environmental Health* seeks not only to highlight the challenges but also to explore the solutions that can lead us toward a healthier, more sustainable future. By bringing attention to these complex issues and their interconnections, this book encourages readers to think critically about how we can all contribute to a more balanced, health-conscious world.

In closing, I hope *Environmental Health* serves as a call to action—one that will empower you to recognize the critical link between environmental stewardship and public health, and inspire you to become part of the global movement toward environmental sustainability and health equity. Together, we can build a healthier future for ourselves and generations to come.

—Editor

Contents

<i>Preface</i>	<i>iii</i>
1. Noise & Effect of Noise Pollution <i>Pro. Jibin Varghese</i>	1
2. Housing: Characteristics of Good Housing <i>Prof. Jibin Varghese</i>	5
3. Noise Control Measure <i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	9
4. Ventilation & Types of Ventilation <i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	13
5. Control of Air Pollution & Use of Safety Measures <i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	17
6. Composition of Water <i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	21
7. Purification of Water <i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghra</i>	25
8. Source of Water <i>Ms. Pooja Patel</i>	29
9. Environmental Health <i>Ms. Pooja Patel</i>	33
10. Humidification <i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	37
11. Fluid Electolytes <i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	44
12. Hypovolemia <i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	53

13. Geriatric	60
<i>Kanan Patel</i>	
14. Quality Assurance in Nursing	113
<i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	
15. Alternative Modalities of Care	140
<i>Ms. Jinal Patel</i>	
16. International Health Agencies	182
<i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	
17. Health Scheme	190
<i>Ms. Khuboo</i>	
18. Concept of Primary Health Care	206
<i>Ms. Khusboo</i>	
19. Nutritional Disorders	215
<i>Renu Susan Varghese</i>	
20. Nutritional Needs	225
<i>Kanan Patel</i>	

10

Humidification

Ms. Jacinta Vasava¹

Objectives

- Describe how airway heat and moisture exchange normally occurs.
- State the effect dry gases have on the respiratory tract.
- State when to humidify and warm inspired gas.
- Describe how various types of humidifiers work.
- Identify the indications, contraindications, and hazards that pertain to humidification during mechanical ventilation.
- Describe how to monitor patients receiving humidity therapy.
- Describe how to identify and resolve common problems with humidification systems

Humidity Therapy

- Humidity is the quantity of moisture in air or gas that is caused by the addition of water in a gaseous state, or vapor. Also called molecular water or invisible moisture.
- Clinical Uses of Humidity To provide 100% body humidity of the inspired gas for patients with ET tubes or tracheostomy tubes.

Absolute and Relative Humidity

- Absolute humidity is the amount of water in a given volume of gas; its measurement is expressed in milligrams per liter.

1. Nursing Tutor, AION

ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH

ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH

Editor

Prof. Jibin Varghese

**MARK PUBLISHERS
JAIPUR**

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Environmental Health

Editor : Prof. Jibin Varghese

Edition : 2020

ISBN : 978-81-89472-33-7

Published by:

Mark Publishers

Jaipur 302 021

Exclusive Distributor:

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,

Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,

Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by:

In-house

Preface

The relationship between human health and the environment is one that has long been understood, yet in today's rapidly changing world, the urgency of addressing this connection has never been clearer. From air quality and water pollution to climate change and ecosystem destruction, the environmental factors that influence our health are complex, intertwined, and increasingly difficult to ignore. *Environmental Health* is an exploration of these critical connections, aiming to educate, inform, and inspire action for the protection of both our environment and our well-being.

This book aims to provide a comprehensive understanding of environmental health, from the basic principles of how environmental factors affect human health to the most pressing issues facing communities today. It draws on scientific research, case studies, and global perspectives to provide a well-rounded view of how human activity has altered the natural world, and how these changes in turn impact everything from public health to biodiversity.

The content is structured to guide readers through the key areas of environmental health, starting with an overview of the foundational concepts—such as pollution, environmental toxins, and the social determinants of health—before diving into more specific topics like climate change, food security, and the health impacts of urbanization. We also explore the role of policy, sustainable development, and community efforts in mitigating the risks to health posed by environmental degradation.

In these pages, you will find an exploration of how our daily choices, industries, and governments impact the environment,

and, by extension, our health. Whether you're an environmentalist, a health professional, a student, or simply someone concerned about the future, this book is designed to equip you with the knowledge needed to understand these pressing issues and take action—individually and collectively—to safeguard our planet and our health.

Through research, insight, and real-world examples, *Environmental Health* seeks not only to highlight the challenges but also to explore the solutions that can lead us toward a healthier, more sustainable future. By bringing attention to these complex issues and their interconnections, this book encourages readers to think critically about how we can all contribute to a more balanced, health-conscious world.

In closing, I hope *Environmental Health* serves as a call to action—one that will empower you to recognize the critical link between environmental stewardship and public health, and inspire you to become part of the global movement toward environmental sustainability and health equity. Together, we can build a healthier future for ourselves and generations to come.

—Editor

Contents

<i>Preface</i>	<i>iii</i>
1. Noise & Effect of Noise Pollution <i>Pro. Jibin Varghese</i>	1
2. Housing: Characteristics of Good Housing <i>Prof. Jibin Varghese</i>	5
3. Noise Control Measure <i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	9
4. Ventilation & Types of Ventilation <i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	13
5. Control of Air Pollution & Use of Safety Measures <i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	17
6. Composition of Water <i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	21
7. Purification of Water <i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghra</i>	25
8. Source of Water <i>Ms. Pooja Patel</i>	29
9. Environmental Health <i>Ms. Pooja Patel</i>	33
10. Humidification <i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	37
11. Fluid Electolytes <i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	44
12. Hypovolemia <i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	53

13. Geriatric	60
<i>Kanan Patel</i>	
14. Quality Assurance in Nursing	113
<i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	
15. Alternative Modalities of Care	140
<i>Ms. Jinal Patel</i>	
16. International Health Agencies	182
<i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	
17. Health Scheme	190
<i>Ms. Khuboo</i>	
18. Concept of Primary Health Care	206
<i>Ms. Khusboo</i>	
19. Nutritional Disorders	215
<i>Renu Susan Varghese</i>	
20. Nutritional Needs	225
<i>Kanan Patel</i>	

11

Fluid Electrolytes

Ms. Jacinta Vasava¹

Learning Objectives

1. Describe variables that influence fluid and electrolyte balance
2. Identify factors related to fluid/electrolyte balance across the life span
3. Assess a patient's nutritional and fluid/electrolyte status
4. Outline specific nursing interventions to promote fluid and electrolyte balance
5. Base decisions on the signs and symptoms of fluid volume excess and fluid volume deficit
6. Base decisions on the interpretation of diagnostic tests and lab values indicative of a disturbance in fluid and electrolyte balance
7. Identify evidence-based practices

The human body maintains a delicate balance of fluids and electrolytes to help ensure proper functioning and homeostasis. When fluids or electrolytes become imbalanced, individuals are at risk for organ system dysfunction. If an imbalance goes undetected and is left untreated, organ systems cannot function properly and ultimately death will occur. Nurses must be able to recognize subtle changes in fluid or electrolyte balances in their patients so they can intervene promptly. Timely assessment and intervention prevent complications and save lives.

1. Nursing Tutor, AION

ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH

ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH

Editor

Prof. Jibin Varghese

**MARK PUBLISHERS
JAIPUR**

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Environmental Health

Editor : Prof. Jibin Varghese

Edition : 2020

ISBN : 978-81-89472-33-7

Published by:

Mark Publishers

Jaipur 302 021

Exclusive Distributor:

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,

Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,

Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by:

In-house

Preface

The relationship between human health and the environment is one that has long been understood, yet in today's rapidly changing world, the urgency of addressing this connection has never been clearer. From air quality and water pollution to climate change and ecosystem destruction, the environmental factors that influence our health are complex, intertwined, and increasingly difficult to ignore. *Environmental Health* is an exploration of these critical connections, aiming to educate, inform, and inspire action for the protection of both our environment and our well-being.

This book aims to provide a comprehensive understanding of environmental health, from the basic principles of how environmental factors affect human health to the most pressing issues facing communities today. It draws on scientific research, case studies, and global perspectives to provide a well-rounded view of how human activity has altered the natural world, and how these changes in turn impact everything from public health to biodiversity.

The content is structured to guide readers through the key areas of environmental health, starting with an overview of the foundational concepts—such as pollution, environmental toxins, and the social determinants of health—before diving into more specific topics like climate change, food security, and the health impacts of urbanization. We also explore the role of policy, sustainable development, and community efforts in mitigating the risks to health posed by environmental degradation.

In these pages, you will find an exploration of how our daily choices, industries, and governments impact the environment,

and, by extension, our health. Whether you're an environmentalist, a health professional, a student, or simply someone concerned about the future, this book is designed to equip you with the knowledge needed to understand these pressing issues and take action—individually and collectively—to safeguard our planet and our health.

Through research, insight, and real-world examples, *Environmental Health* seeks not only to highlight the challenges but also to explore the solutions that can lead us toward a healthier, more sustainable future. By bringing attention to these complex issues and their interconnections, this book encourages readers to think critically about how we can all contribute to a more balanced, health-conscious world.

In closing, I hope *Environmental Health* serves as a call to action—one that will empower you to recognize the critical link between environmental stewardship and public health, and inspire you to become part of the global movement toward environmental sustainability and health equity. Together, we can build a healthier future for ourselves and generations to come.

—Editor

Contents

<i>Preface</i>	<i>iii</i>
1. Noise & Effect of Noise Pollution <i>Pro. Jibin Varghese</i>	1
2. Housing: Characteristics of Good Housing <i>Prof. Jibin Varghese</i>	5
3. Noise Control Measure <i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	9
4. Ventilation & Types of Ventilation <i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	13
5. Control of Air Pollution & Use of Safety Measures <i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	17
6. Composition of Water <i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	21
7. Purification of Water <i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghra</i>	25
8. Source of Water <i>Ms. Pooja Patel</i>	29
9. Environmental Health <i>Ms. Pooja Patel</i>	33
10. Humidification <i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	37
11. Fluid Electolytes <i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	44
12. Hypovolemia <i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	53

13. Geriatric	60
<i>Kanan Patel</i>	
14. Quality Assurance in Nursing	113
<i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	
15. Alternative Modalities of Care	140
<i>Ms. Jinal Patel</i>	
16. International Health Agencies	182
<i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	
17. Health Scheme	190
<i>Ms. Khuboo</i>	
18. Concept of Primary Health Care	206
<i>Ms. Khusboo</i>	
19. Nutritional Disorders	215
<i>Renu Susan Varghese</i>	
20. Nutritional Needs	225
<i>Kanan Patel</i>	

What is hypovolemia?

- Hypovolemia occurs when you don't have enough fluid (blood) volume circulating in your body. A low volume of fluid could include water, blood (plasma) in your circulatory system and/or lymphatic fluid. Lymphatic fluid is a liquid substance full of **white blood cells** that helps remove toxins and waste from your body.
- About 50% to 60% of your body consists of fluid. If you have hypovolemia, you lose more than 15% of the total volume of fluid within your circulatory system.
- Immediate treatment for hypovolemia is necessary to prevent life-threatening complications like organ damage, shock or death.

What is hypovolemic shock?

- Hypovolemic shock is the most severe form of hypovolemia that needs emergency treatment. This condition occurs when you lose a significant amount of fluid or blood, which prevents your heart from pumping blood throughout your body. Hypovolemic shock can cause your organs to stop functioning.
- People who experience hypovolemic shock lose more than 20% of the amount of fluid in their body, which could be

1. Nursing Tutor, AION

ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH

ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH

Editor

Prof. Jibin Varghese

**MARK PUBLISHERS
JAIPUR**

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Environmental Health

Editor : Prof. Jibin Varghese

Edition : 2020

ISBN : 978-81-89472-33-7

Published by:

Mark Publishers

Jaipur 302 021

Exclusive Distributor:

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,

Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,

Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by:

In-house

Preface

The relationship between human health and the environment is one that has long been understood, yet in today's rapidly changing world, the urgency of addressing this connection has never been clearer. From air quality and water pollution to climate change and ecosystem destruction, the environmental factors that influence our health are complex, intertwined, and increasingly difficult to ignore. *Environmental Health* is an exploration of these critical connections, aiming to educate, inform, and inspire action for the protection of both our environment and our well-being.

This book aims to provide a comprehensive understanding of environmental health, from the basic principles of how environmental factors affect human health to the most pressing issues facing communities today. It draws on scientific research, case studies, and global perspectives to provide a well-rounded view of how human activity has altered the natural world, and how these changes in turn impact everything from public health to biodiversity.

The content is structured to guide readers through the key areas of environmental health, starting with an overview of the foundational concepts—such as pollution, environmental toxins, and the social determinants of health—before diving into more specific topics like climate change, food security, and the health impacts of urbanization. We also explore the role of policy, sustainable development, and community efforts in mitigating the risks to health posed by environmental degradation.

In these pages, you will find an exploration of how our daily choices, industries, and governments impact the environment,

and, by extension, our health. Whether you're an environmentalist, a health professional, a student, or simply someone concerned about the future, this book is designed to equip you with the knowledge needed to understand these pressing issues and take action—individually and collectively—to safeguard our planet and our health.

Through research, insight, and real-world examples, *Environmental Health* seeks not only to highlight the challenges but also to explore the solutions that can lead us toward a healthier, more sustainable future. By bringing attention to these complex issues and their interconnections, this book encourages readers to think critically about how we can all contribute to a more balanced, health-conscious world.

In closing, I hope *Environmental Health* serves as a call to action—one that will empower you to recognize the critical link between environmental stewardship and public health, and inspire you to become part of the global movement toward environmental sustainability and health equity. Together, we can build a healthier future for ourselves and generations to come.

—Editor

Contents

<i>Preface</i>	<i>iii</i>
1. Noise & Effect of Noise Pollution <i>Pro. Jibin Varghese</i>	1
2. Housing: Characteristics of Good Housing <i>Prof. Jibin Varghese</i>	5
3. Noise Control Measure <i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	9
4. Ventilation & Types of Ventilation <i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	13
5. Control of Air Pollution & Use of Safety Measures <i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	17
6. Composition of Water <i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	21
7. Purification of Water <i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghra</i>	25
8. Source of Water <i>Ms. Pooja Patel</i>	29
9. Environmental Health <i>Ms. Pooja Patel</i>	33
10. Humidification <i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	37
11. Fluid Electolytes <i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	44
12. Hypovolemia <i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	53

13. Geriatric	60
<i>Kanan Patel</i>	
14. Quality Assurance in Nursing	113
<i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	
15. Alternative Modalities of Care	140
<i>Ms. Jinal Patel</i>	
16. International Health Agencies	182
<i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	
17. Health Scheme	190
<i>Ms. Khuboo</i>	
18. Concept of Primary Health Care	206
<i>Ms. Khusboo</i>	
19. Nutritional Disorders	215
<i>Renu Susan Varghese</i>	
20. Nutritional Needs	225
<i>Kanan Patel</i>	

INTRODUCTION

Geriatric medicine was a product of the British NHS. Nascher was the father of geriatrics and Majory Warren was its Mother the 1st Geriatric service was started in U.K in 1947. Geriatric department at Chennai was established in 1978. Post Graduate course in Geriatric medicine has been started in 1996 at Madras medical college. Prof. V.S. Natarajan was the first Geriatric professor in India.



1. Nursing Tutor, Aarohant Institute of Nursing

ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH

ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH

Editor

Prof. Jibin Varghese

**MARK PUBLISHERS
JAIPUR**

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Environmental Health

Editor : Prof. Jibin Varghese

Edition : 2020

ISBN : 978-81-89472-33-7

Published by:

Mark Publishers

Jaipur 302 021

Exclusive Distributor:

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,

Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,

Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by:

In-house

Preface

The relationship between human health and the environment is one that has long been understood, yet in today's rapidly changing world, the urgency of addressing this connection has never been clearer. From air quality and water pollution to climate change and ecosystem destruction, the environmental factors that influence our health are complex, intertwined, and increasingly difficult to ignore. *Environmental Health* is an exploration of these critical connections, aiming to educate, inform, and inspire action for the protection of both our environment and our well-being.

This book aims to provide a comprehensive understanding of environmental health, from the basic principles of how environmental factors affect human health to the most pressing issues facing communities today. It draws on scientific research, case studies, and global perspectives to provide a well-rounded view of how human activity has altered the natural world, and how these changes in turn impact everything from public health to biodiversity.

The content is structured to guide readers through the key areas of environmental health, starting with an overview of the foundational concepts—such as pollution, environmental toxins, and the social determinants of health—before diving into more specific topics like climate change, food security, and the health impacts of urbanization. We also explore the role of policy, sustainable development, and community efforts in mitigating the risks to health posed by environmental degradation.

In these pages, you will find an exploration of how our daily choices, industries, and governments impact the environment,

and, by extension, our health. Whether you're an environmentalist, a health professional, a student, or simply someone concerned about the future, this book is designed to equip you with the knowledge needed to understand these pressing issues and take action—individually and collectively—to safeguard our planet and our health.

Through research, insight, and real-world examples, *Environmental Health* seeks not only to highlight the challenges but also to explore the solutions that can lead us toward a healthier, more sustainable future. By bringing attention to these complex issues and their interconnections, this book encourages readers to think critically about how we can all contribute to a more balanced, health-conscious world.

In closing, I hope *Environmental Health* serves as a call to action—one that will empower you to recognize the critical link between environmental stewardship and public health, and inspire you to become part of the global movement toward environmental sustainability and health equity. Together, we can build a healthier future for ourselves and generations to come.

—Editor

Contents

<i>Preface</i>	<i>iii</i>
1. Noise & Effect of Noise Pollution <i>Pro. Jibin Varghese</i>	1
2. Housing: Characteristics of Good Housing <i>Prof. Jibin Varghese</i>	5
3. Noise Control Measure <i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	9
4. Ventilation & Types of Ventilation <i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	13
5. Control of Air Pollution & Use of Safety Measures <i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	17
6. Composition of Water <i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	21
7. Purification of Water <i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghra</i>	25
8. Source of Water <i>Ms. Pooja Patel</i>	29
9. Environmental Health <i>Ms. Pooja Patel</i>	33
10. Humidification <i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	37
11. Fluid Electolytes <i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	44
12. Hypovolemia <i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	53

13. Geriatric	60
<i>Kanan Patel</i>	
14. Quality Assurance in Nursing	113
<i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	
15. Alternative Modalities of Care	140
<i>Ms. Jinal Patel</i>	
16. International Health Agencies	182
<i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	
17. Health Scheme	190
<i>Ms. Khuboo</i>	
18. Concept of Primary Health Care	206
<i>Ms. Khusboo</i>	
19. Nutritional Disorders	215
<i>Renu Susan Varghese</i>	
20. Nutritional Needs	225
<i>Kanan Patel</i>	

INTRODUCTION

Public concerns about availability of effective services to all at reasonable cost and demand for quality care, increasing legal action in malpractice, and consumer protection acts have placed a new emphasis on quality care and development of technique for evaluating health care in recent years.

Assuring the quality of patient health or wellness outcomes involves both evaluating the degree of excellence of the results of delivered care and taking action to make improvement that in the future will result in a higher degree of quality.

Quality management (QM) and quality improvement (QI) are the basic concepts derived from the philosophy of total quality management (TQM). Now it is preferred to use the term Continuous Quality Improvement (CQI) since TQM can never be achieved. And the method of monitoring of healthcare for CQI is done with Quality Assurance (QA).

Definitions

- Quality assurance is a general term for all arrangements and activities that are mean to safeguard, maintain and promote quality of care. (Dr. Aveda's Donabedian).
- Quality assurance is a systematic inquiry including those activities or programme components designed to evaluate

1. Nursing Tutor, Aarihant Institute of Nursing

ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH

ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH

Editor

Prof. Jibin Varghese

**MARK PUBLISHERS
JAIPUR**

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Environmental Health

Editor : Prof. Jibin Varghese

Edition : 2020

ISBN : 978-81-89472-33-7

Published by:

Mark Publishers

Jaipur 302 021

Exclusive Distributor:

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,

Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,

Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by:

In-house

Preface

The relationship between human health and the environment is one that has long been understood, yet in today's rapidly changing world, the urgency of addressing this connection has never been clearer. From air quality and water pollution to climate change and ecosystem destruction, the environmental factors that influence our health are complex, intertwined, and increasingly difficult to ignore. *Environmental Health* is an exploration of these critical connections, aiming to educate, inform, and inspire action for the protection of both our environment and our well-being.

This book aims to provide a comprehensive understanding of environmental health, from the basic principles of how environmental factors affect human health to the most pressing issues facing communities today. It draws on scientific research, case studies, and global perspectives to provide a well-rounded view of how human activity has altered the natural world, and how these changes in turn impact everything from public health to biodiversity.

The content is structured to guide readers through the key areas of environmental health, starting with an overview of the foundational concepts—such as pollution, environmental toxins, and the social determinants of health—before diving into more specific topics like climate change, food security, and the health impacts of urbanization. We also explore the role of policy, sustainable development, and community efforts in mitigating the risks to health posed by environmental degradation.

In these pages, you will find an exploration of how our daily choices, industries, and governments impact the environment,

and, by extension, our health. Whether you're an environmentalist, a health professional, a student, or simply someone concerned about the future, this book is designed to equip you with the knowledge needed to understand these pressing issues and take action—individually and collectively—to safeguard our planet and our health.

Through research, insight, and real-world examples, *Environmental Health* seeks not only to highlight the challenges but also to explore the solutions that can lead us toward a healthier, more sustainable future. By bringing attention to these complex issues and their interconnections, this book encourages readers to think critically about how we can all contribute to a more balanced, health-conscious world.

In closing, I hope *Environmental Health* serves as a call to action—one that will empower you to recognize the critical link between environmental stewardship and public health, and inspire you to become part of the global movement toward environmental sustainability and health equity. Together, we can build a healthier future for ourselves and generations to come.

—Editor

Contents

<i>Preface</i>	<i>iii</i>
1. Noise & Effect of Noise Pollution <i>Pro. Jibin Varghese</i>	1
2. Housing: Characteristics of Good Housing <i>Prof. Jibin Varghese</i>	5
3. Noise Control Measure <i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	9
4. Ventilation & Types of Ventilation <i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	13
5. Control of Air Pollution & Use of Safety Measures <i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	17
6. Composition of Water <i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	21
7. Purification of Water <i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghra</i>	25
8. Source of Water <i>Ms. Pooja Patel</i>	29
9. Environmental Health <i>Ms. Pooja Patel</i>	33
10. Humidification <i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	37
11. Fluid Electolytes <i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	44
12. Hypovolemia <i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	53

13. Geriatric	60
<i>Kanan Patel</i>	
14. Quality Assurance in Nursing	113
<i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	
15. Alternative Modalities of Care	140
<i>Ms. Jinal Patel</i>	
16. International Health Agencies	182
<i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	
17. Health Scheme	190
<i>Ms. Khuboo</i>	
18. Concept of Primary Health Care	206
<i>Ms. Khusboo</i>	
19. Nutritional Disorders	215
<i>Renu Susan Varghese</i>	
20. Nutritional Needs	225
<i>Kanan Patel</i>	

INTRODUCTION

Alternative medicine is any practice claiming to heal “that does not fall within the realm of conventional medicine.” It may be based on historical or cultural traditions, rather than on scientific evidence.

Alternative medicine is frequently grouped with complementary medicine or integrative medicine, which, in general, refers to the same interventions when used in conjunction with mainstream techniques, under the umbrella term complementary and alternative medicine, or CAM

The techniques that are used in addition to the conventional medicine. Nursing, however, is a holistic approach at its essence. Likely, it is because nursing is a holistic discipline that nurses have demonstrated great enthusiasm for the techniques and modalities associated with the field of complementary and alternative care as these techniques assist nurses to address the physical, mental, emotional, and spiritual dimensions of care.

History

History has it that alternative medicine goes back 5000 years to Chinese traditional medicine, Indian (Ayurvedic medicine) and similar healing traditions in many cultures. The common

1. Nursing Tutor, Aarohant Institute of Nursing

ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH

ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH

Editor

Prof. Jibin Varghese

**MARK PUBLISHERS
JAIPUR**

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Environmental Health

Editor : Prof. Jibin Varghese

Edition : 2020

ISBN : 978-81-89472-33-7

Published by:

Mark Publishers

Jaipur 302 021

Exclusive Distributor:

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,

Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,

Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by:

In-house

Preface

The relationship between human health and the environment is one that has long been understood, yet in today's rapidly changing world, the urgency of addressing this connection has never been clearer. From air quality and water pollution to climate change and ecosystem destruction, the environmental factors that influence our health are complex, intertwined, and increasingly difficult to ignore. *Environmental Health* is an exploration of these critical connections, aiming to educate, inform, and inspire action for the protection of both our environment and our well-being.

This book aims to provide a comprehensive understanding of environmental health, from the basic principles of how environmental factors affect human health to the most pressing issues facing communities today. It draws on scientific research, case studies, and global perspectives to provide a well-rounded view of how human activity has altered the natural world, and how these changes in turn impact everything from public health to biodiversity.

The content is structured to guide readers through the key areas of environmental health, starting with an overview of the foundational concepts—such as pollution, environmental toxins, and the social determinants of health—before diving into more specific topics like climate change, food security, and the health impacts of urbanization. We also explore the role of policy, sustainable development, and community efforts in mitigating the risks to health posed by environmental degradation.

In these pages, you will find an exploration of how our daily choices, industries, and governments impact the environment,

and, by extension, our health. Whether you're an environmentalist, a health professional, a student, or simply someone concerned about the future, this book is designed to equip you with the knowledge needed to understand these pressing issues and take action—individually and collectively—to safeguard our planet and our health.

Through research, insight, and real-world examples, *Environmental Health* seeks not only to highlight the challenges but also to explore the solutions that can lead us toward a healthier, more sustainable future. By bringing attention to these complex issues and their interconnections, this book encourages readers to think critically about how we can all contribute to a more balanced, health-conscious world.

In closing, I hope *Environmental Health* serves as a call to action—one that will empower you to recognize the critical link between environmental stewardship and public health, and inspire you to become part of the global movement toward environmental sustainability and health equity. Together, we can build a healthier future for ourselves and generations to come.

—Editor

Contents

<i>Preface</i>	<i>iii</i>
1. Noise & Effect of Noise Pollution <i>Pro. Jibin Varghese</i>	1
2. Housing: Characteristics of Good Housing <i>Prof. Jibin Varghese</i>	5
3. Noise Control Measure <i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	9
4. Ventilation & Types of Ventilation <i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	13
5. Control of Air Pollution & Use of Safety Measures <i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	17
6. Composition of Water <i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	21
7. Purification of Water <i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghra</i>	25
8. Source of Water <i>Ms. Pooja Patel</i>	29
9. Environmental Health <i>Ms. Pooja Patel</i>	33
10. Humidification <i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	37
11. Fluid Electolytes <i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	44
12. Hypovolemia <i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	53

13. Geriatric	60
<i>Kanan Patel</i>	
14. Quality Assurance in Nursing	113
<i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	
15. Alternative Modalities of Care	140
<i>Ms. Jinal Patel</i>	
16. International Health Agencies	182
<i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	
17. Health Scheme	190
<i>Ms. Khuboo</i>	
18. Concept of Primary Health Care	206
<i>Ms. Khusboo</i>	
19. Nutritional Disorders	215
<i>Renu Susan Varghese</i>	
20. Nutritional Needs	225
<i>Kanan Patel</i>	

INTRODUCTION

International health agencies, health services in developing countries mostly reflect their own widely varying capacities.

The international systems plays an ancillary role, and concerning to improving health of people.

1. **Un- United Nation:** 5 main purposes:
 - To keep peace throughout the world
 - To develop friendly relations among nations
 - To help nations work together to improve lives of poor people
 - To conquer hunger, disease and illiteracy and to encourage respect for each other's rights and freedom
 - To be a centre for harmonizing the actions of nations to achieve these goals
2. **World Bank**
 - International agency related to the UN.
 - Heavily involved in international health.
 - The world bank loans money to poor countries on advantageous terms not available in commercial markets that will lead to economic growth of that country.
 - E.g. india's population project.
 - The project are usually concerned with electric power, roads, railway, agriculture, water supply, education, family planning etc.

1. Nursing Tutor, Aarohant Institute of Nursing

ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH

ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH

Editor

Prof. Jibin Varghese

**MARK PUBLISHERS
JAIPUR**

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Environmental Health

Editor : Prof. Jibin Varghese

Edition : 2020

ISBN : 978-81-89472-33-7

Published by:

Mark Publishers

Jaipur 302 021

Exclusive Distributor:

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,

Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,

Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by:

In-house

Preface

The relationship between human health and the environment is one that has long been understood, yet in today's rapidly changing world, the urgency of addressing this connection has never been clearer. From air quality and water pollution to climate change and ecosystem destruction, the environmental factors that influence our health are complex, intertwined, and increasingly difficult to ignore. *Environmental Health* is an exploration of these critical connections, aiming to educate, inform, and inspire action for the protection of both our environment and our well-being.

This book aims to provide a comprehensive understanding of environmental health, from the basic principles of how environmental factors affect human health to the most pressing issues facing communities today. It draws on scientific research, case studies, and global perspectives to provide a well-rounded view of how human activity has altered the natural world, and how these changes in turn impact everything from public health to biodiversity.

The content is structured to guide readers through the key areas of environmental health, starting with an overview of the foundational concepts—such as pollution, environmental toxins, and the social determinants of health—before diving into more specific topics like climate change, food security, and the health impacts of urbanization. We also explore the role of policy, sustainable development, and community efforts in mitigating the risks to health posed by environmental degradation.

In these pages, you will find an exploration of how our daily choices, industries, and governments impact the environment,

and, by extension, our health. Whether you're an environmentalist, a health professional, a student, or simply someone concerned about the future, this book is designed to equip you with the knowledge needed to understand these pressing issues and take action—individually and collectively—to safeguard our planet and our health.

Through research, insight, and real-world examples, *Environmental Health* seeks not only to highlight the challenges but also to explore the solutions that can lead us toward a healthier, more sustainable future. By bringing attention to these complex issues and their interconnections, this book encourages readers to think critically about how we can all contribute to a more balanced, health-conscious world.

In closing, I hope *Environmental Health* serves as a call to action—one that will empower you to recognize the critical link between environmental stewardship and public health, and inspire you to become part of the global movement toward environmental sustainability and health equity. Together, we can build a healthier future for ourselves and generations to come.

—Editor

Contents

<i>Preface</i>	<i>iii</i>
1. Noise & Effect of Noise Pollution <i>Pro. Jibin Varghese</i>	1
2. Housing: Characteristics of Good Housing <i>Prof. Jibin Varghese</i>	5
3. Noise Control Measure <i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	9
4. Ventilation & Types of Ventilation <i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	13
5. Control of Air Pollution & Use of Safety Measures <i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	17
6. Composition of Water <i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	21
7. Purification of Water <i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghra</i>	25
8. Source of Water <i>Ms. Pooja Patel</i>	29
9. Environmental Health <i>Ms. Pooja Patel</i>	33
10. Humidification <i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	37
11. Fluid Electolytes <i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	44
12. Hypovolemia <i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	53

13. Geriatric	60
<i>Kanan Patel</i>	
14. Quality Assurance in Nursing	113
<i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	
15. Alternative Modalities of Care	140
<i>Ms. Jinal Patel</i>	
16. International Health Agencies	182
<i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	
17. Health Scheme	190
<i>Ms. Khuboo</i>	
18. Concept of Primary Health Care	206
<i>Ms. Khusboo</i>	
19. Nutritional Disorders	215
<i>Renu Susan Varghese</i>	
20. Nutritional Needs	225
<i>Kanan Patel</i>	

INTRODUCTION

Health insurance is insurance against the risk of incurring medical expenses among individuals. By estimating the overall risk of health care and health system expenses, among a targeted group, an insurer can develop a routine finance structure, such as a monthly premium or payroll tax, to ensure that money is available to pay for the health care benefits specified in the insurance agreement. The benefit is administered by a central organization such as a government agency, private business, or not-for-profit entity. According to the Health Insurance Association of America, health insurance is defined as “coverage that provides for the payments of benefits as a result of sickness or injury. Includes insurance for losses from accident, medical expense, disability, or accidental death and dismemberment” The CGHS (Central Government Health Scheme) started in 1954, with its headquarters at New Delhi. Its main objective is to provide comprehensive medical care to the Central Government employees that incorporate - both serving and pensioners including their dependent family members.

In India, the CGHS (Central Government Health Scheme) provides health care facilities to beneficiaries that includes All Central Government Servants paid through Civil Estimates, Ex-Governors and Ex-Vice Presidents, former Prime Ministers, Judges of Supreme Court and High Courts in India, Members of Parliament and Ex-MPs, Pensioners drawing pension from Civil Estimates and their family members, Employees and

1. Nursing Tutor, Aarohant Institute of Nursing

ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH

ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH

Editor

Prof. Jibin Varghese

MARK PUBLISHERS
JAIPUR

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Environmental Health

Editor : Prof. Jibin Varghese

Edition : 2020

ISBN : 978-81-89472-33-7

Published by:

Mark Publishers

Jaipur 302 021

Exclusive Distributor:

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,

Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,

Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by:

In-house

Preface

The relationship between human health and the environment is one that has long been understood, yet in today's rapidly changing world, the urgency of addressing this connection has never been clearer. From air quality and water pollution to climate change and ecosystem destruction, the environmental factors that influence our health are complex, intertwined, and increasingly difficult to ignore. *Environmental Health* is an exploration of these critical connections, aiming to educate, inform, and inspire action for the protection of both our environment and our well-being.

This book aims to provide a comprehensive understanding of environmental health, from the basic principles of how environmental factors affect human health to the most pressing issues facing communities today. It draws on scientific research, case studies, and global perspectives to provide a well-rounded view of how human activity has altered the natural world, and how these changes in turn impact everything from public health to biodiversity.

The content is structured to guide readers through the key areas of environmental health, starting with an overview of the foundational concepts—such as pollution, environmental toxins, and the social determinants of health—before diving into more specific topics like climate change, food security, and the health impacts of urbanization. We also explore the role of policy, sustainable development, and community efforts in mitigating the risks to health posed by environmental degradation.

In these pages, you will find an exploration of how our daily choices, industries, and governments impact the environment,

and, by extension, our health. Whether you're an environmentalist, a health professional, a student, or simply someone concerned about the future, this book is designed to equip you with the knowledge needed to understand these pressing issues and take action—individually and collectively—to safeguard our planet and our health.

Through research, insight, and real-world examples, *Environmental Health* seeks not only to highlight the challenges but also to explore the solutions that can lead us toward a healthier, more sustainable future. By bringing attention to these complex issues and their interconnections, this book encourages readers to think critically about how we can all contribute to a more balanced, health-conscious world.

In closing, I hope *Environmental Health* serves as a call to action—one that will empower you to recognize the critical link between environmental stewardship and public health, and inspire you to become part of the global movement toward environmental sustainability and health equity. Together, we can build a healthier future for ourselves and generations to come.

—Editor

Contents

<i>Preface</i>	<i>iii</i>
1. Noise & Effect of Noise Pollution <i>Pro. Jibin Varghese</i>	1
2. Housing: Characteristics of Good Housing <i>Prof. Jibin Varghese</i>	5
3. Noise Control Measure <i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	9
4. Ventilation & Types of Ventilation <i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	13
5. Control of Air Pollution & Use of Safety Measures <i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	17
6. Composition of Water <i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	21
7. Purification of Water <i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghra</i>	25
8. Source of Water <i>Ms. Pooja Patel</i>	29
9. Environmental Health <i>Ms. Pooja Patel</i>	33
10. Humidification <i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	37
11. Fluid Electolytes <i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	44
12. Hypovolemia <i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	53

13. Geriatric	60
<i>Kanan Patel</i>	
14. Quality Assurance in Nursing	113
<i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	
15. Alternative Modalities of Care	140
<i>Ms. Jinal Patel</i>	
16. International Health Agencies	182
<i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	
17. Health Scheme	190
<i>Ms. Khuboo</i>	
18. Concept of Primary Health Care	206
<i>Ms. Khusboo</i>	
19. Nutritional Disorders	215
<i>Renu Susan Varghese</i>	
20. Nutritional Needs	225
<i>Kanan Patel</i>	

Concept of Primary Health Care

Ms. Khushboo¹

Genesis of Primary Health Care

A new approach the Health care came into existence In 1978, following an international conference at Alma Ata (USSR). This is known as “primary health care” It has all the hallmarks of a primary health care delivery, first proposed by the Bhore Committee in 1946 and now espoused world-wide by international agencies and national governments.

Before Alma-Ata, primary health care was regarded as synonymous with “basic health services’ “first contact care’, “easily accessible care”, “services provided by generalists”, etc

The Alma-Ata international conference gave primary health care a wider meaning, the Alma-Ata Conference **defined** primary health care as follows:

“Primary health care is essential health care made universally accessible to individuals and acceptable to them, through their full participation and at a cost the community and country can afford.”

The Primary Health Care Philosophy

The PHC philosophy incorporates certain fundamental values common to the overall process of development, but receiving fresh **emphasis in** the field of health. These are:

1. Nursing Tutor, Aarohant Institute of nursing

ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH

ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH

Editor

Prof. Jibin Varghese

**MARK PUBLISHERS
JAIPUR**

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Environmental Health

Editor : Prof. Jibin Varghese

Edition : 2020

ISBN : 978-81-89472-33-7

Published by:

Mark Publishers

Jaipur 302 021

Exclusive Distributor:

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,

Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,

Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by:

In-house

Preface

The relationship between human health and the environment is one that has long been understood, yet in today's rapidly changing world, the urgency of addressing this connection has never been clearer. From air quality and water pollution to climate change and ecosystem destruction, the environmental factors that influence our health are complex, intertwined, and increasingly difficult to ignore. *Environmental Health* is an exploration of these critical connections, aiming to educate, inform, and inspire action for the protection of both our environment and our well-being.

This book aims to provide a comprehensive understanding of environmental health, from the basic principles of how environmental factors affect human health to the most pressing issues facing communities today. It draws on scientific research, case studies, and global perspectives to provide a well-rounded view of how human activity has altered the natural world, and how these changes in turn impact everything from public health to biodiversity.

The content is structured to guide readers through the key areas of environmental health, starting with an overview of the foundational concepts—such as pollution, environmental toxins, and the social determinants of health—before diving into more specific topics like climate change, food security, and the health impacts of urbanization. We also explore the role of policy, sustainable development, and community efforts in mitigating the risks to health posed by environmental degradation.

In these pages, you will find an exploration of how our daily choices, industries, and governments impact the environment,

and, by extension, our health. Whether you're an environmentalist, a health professional, a student, or simply someone concerned about the future, this book is designed to equip you with the knowledge needed to understand these pressing issues and take action—individually and collectively—to safeguard our planet and our health.

Through research, insight, and real-world examples, *Environmental Health* seeks not only to highlight the challenges but also to explore the solutions that can lead us toward a healthier, more sustainable future. By bringing attention to these complex issues and their interconnections, this book encourages readers to think critically about how we can all contribute to a more balanced, health-conscious world.

In closing, I hope *Environmental Health* serves as a call to action—one that will empower you to recognize the critical link between environmental stewardship and public health, and inspire you to become part of the global movement toward environmental sustainability and health equity. Together, we can build a healthier future for ourselves and generations to come.

—Editor

Contents

<i>Preface</i>	<i>iii</i>
1. Noise & Effect of Noise Pollution <i>Pro. Jibin Varghese</i>	1
2. Housing: Characteristics of Good Housing <i>Prof. Jibin Varghese</i>	5
3. Noise Control Measure <i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	9
4. Ventilation & Types of Ventilation <i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	13
5. Control of Air Pollution & Use of Safety Measures <i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	17
6. Composition of Water <i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	21
7. Purification of Water <i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghra</i>	25
8. Source of Water <i>Ms. Pooja Patel</i>	29
9. Environmental Health <i>Ms. Pooja Patel</i>	33
10. Humidification <i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	37
11. Fluid Electolytes <i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	44
12. Hypovolemia <i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	53

13. Geriatric	60
<i>Kanan Patel</i>	
14. Quality Assurance in Nursing	113
<i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	
15. Alternative Modalities of Care	140
<i>Ms. Jinal Patel</i>	
16. International Health Agencies	182
<i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	
17. Health Scheme	190
<i>Ms. Khuboo</i>	
18. Concept of Primary Health Care	206
<i>Ms. Khusboo</i>	
19. Nutritional Disorders	215
<i>Renu Susan Varghese</i>	
20. Nutritional Needs	225
<i>Kanan Patel</i>	

19

Nutritional Disorders

Renu Susan Varghese¹

Nutritional Disorders

- Obesity
- Kwashiorkor
- Marasmus
- Anorexia nervosa
- Bulimia nervosa
- Vitamin deficiency
- Malnutrition
- Pem (protein energy malnutrition)



1. Nursing tutor, AION

ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH

ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH

Editor

Prof. Jibin Varghese

**MARK PUBLISHERS
JAIPUR**

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Environmental Health

Editor : Prof. Jibin Varghese

Edition : 2020

ISBN : 978-81-89472-33-7

Published by:

Mark Publishers

Jaipur 302 021

Exclusive Distributor:

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,

Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,

Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by:

In-house

Preface

The relationship between human health and the environment is one that has long been understood, yet in today's rapidly changing world, the urgency of addressing this connection has never been clearer. From air quality and water pollution to climate change and ecosystem destruction, the environmental factors that influence our health are complex, intertwined, and increasingly difficult to ignore. *Environmental Health* is an exploration of these critical connections, aiming to educate, inform, and inspire action for the protection of both our environment and our well-being.

This book aims to provide a comprehensive understanding of environmental health, from the basic principles of how environmental factors affect human health to the most pressing issues facing communities today. It draws on scientific research, case studies, and global perspectives to provide a well-rounded view of how human activity has altered the natural world, and how these changes in turn impact everything from public health to biodiversity.

The content is structured to guide readers through the key areas of environmental health, starting with an overview of the foundational concepts—such as pollution, environmental toxins, and the social determinants of health—before diving into more specific topics like climate change, food security, and the health impacts of urbanization. We also explore the role of policy, sustainable development, and community efforts in mitigating the risks to health posed by environmental degradation.

In these pages, you will find an exploration of how our daily choices, industries, and governments impact the environment,

and, by extension, our health. Whether you're an environmentalist, a health professional, a student, or simply someone concerned about the future, this book is designed to equip you with the knowledge needed to understand these pressing issues and take action—individually and collectively—to safeguard our planet and our health.

Through research, insight, and real-world examples, *Environmental Health* seeks not only to highlight the challenges but also to explore the solutions that can lead us toward a healthier, more sustainable future. By bringing attention to these complex issues and their interconnections, this book encourages readers to think critically about how we can all contribute to a more balanced, health-conscious world.

In closing, I hope *Environmental Health* serves as a call to action—one that will empower you to recognize the critical link between environmental stewardship and public health, and inspire you to become part of the global movement toward environmental sustainability and health equity. Together, we can build a healthier future for ourselves and generations to come.

—Editor

Contents

<i>Preface</i>	<i>iii</i>
1. Noise & Effect of Noise Pollution <i>Pro. Jibin Varghese</i>	1
2. Housing: Characteristics of Good Housing <i>Prof. Jibin Varghese</i>	5
3. Noise Control Measure <i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	9
4. Ventilation & Types of Ventilation <i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	13
5. Control of Air Pollution & Use of Safety Measures <i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	17
6. Composition of Water <i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	21
7. Purification of Water <i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghra</i>	25
8. Source of Water <i>Ms. Pooja Patel</i>	29
9. Environmental Health <i>Ms. Pooja Patel</i>	33
10. Humidification <i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	37
11. Fluid Electolytes <i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	44
12. Hypovolemia <i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	53

13. Geriatric	60
<i>Kanan Patel</i>	
14. Quality Assurance in Nursing	113
<i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	
15. Alternative Modalities of Care	140
<i>Ms. Jinal Patel</i>	
16. International Health Agencies	182
<i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	
17. Health Scheme	190
<i>Ms. Khuboo</i>	
18. Concept of Primary Health Care	206
<i>Ms. Khusboo</i>	
19. Nutritional Disorders	215
<i>Renu Susan Varghese</i>	
20. Nutritional Needs	225
<i>Kanan Patel</i>	

Define

Nutrients are defined as the constituents of food, which perform important functions in our body. If these nutrients are not present in our body in sufficient amount, the result is ill health. Important nutrients include carbohydrate, proteins, lipids, vitamins, minerals & water.

Importance

- Supplies nutrients for energy. nutrients include carbohydrate, fats, & proteins.
- Supplies nutrients to build & maintain body tissues.
- Food supplies heat & energy for work & play.
- Food supplies materials for regulation or control of body process & protection of the body.
- It gives a feeling of security.

Factors Affecting Nutritional Needs

- Physical, mental fatigue.
- Hurry, worry & fear.
- Unpleasant environment & experiences.
- Lack of exercise.
- Irregular meals.
- Long spacing of meal timings.
- Hospitalization.

1. Nursing Tutor, AION

ESSENTIALS OF OPERATION THEATRE

ESSENTIALS OF OPERATION THEATRE

Editor

Prof. Sejal Patel

MARK PUBLISHERS
JAIPUR

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Essentials of Operation Theatre

Editor : Prof. Sejal Patel

Edition : 2020

ISBN : 978-81-89472-34-4

Published by:

Mark Publishers

Jaipur

Exclusive Distributor:

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,
Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,
Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by:

In-house

Preface

The operating theatre is one of the most critical environments in the healthcare system, where precision, expertise, and teamwork come together to save lives and improve patient outcomes. Behind every successful surgery lies not only the skill of the surgeon but also the seamless coordination of all the professionals and resources within the operation theatre. *Essentials of Operation Theatre* is written to provide an in-depth guide to the principles, practices, and protocols that ensure the smooth functioning of this vital space.

This book serves as a comprehensive resource for anyone involved in the operation theatre environment—whether they are surgeons, anesthesiologists, nurses, technicians, or students. It brings together key aspects of operation theatre management, focusing on the technical, logistical, and safety measures that are essential for maintaining a high standard of care.

From understanding the layout and design of the operating room to the roles of different healthcare professionals, *Essentials of Operation Theatre* emphasizes the importance of hygiene, sterilization, equipment handling, patient safety, and effective communication. It also provides a clear understanding of the surgical workflow, from patient preparation to post-operative care, highlighting the importance of efficiency and attention to detail in ensuring positive outcomes.

The book is divided into easy-to-follow sections, starting with the fundamental principles of operation theatre management, including the anatomy of the operating room, infection control practices, and the preparation of the surgical team and instruments. It then delves into specific surgical procedures, offering guidelines for various types of surgeries, including general, orthopedic, cardiac, and specialized fields. Each

chapter includes practical tips, case studies, and real-world examples to illustrate the best practices and challenges faced in the operating room.

In writing this book, the goal is not only to educate and inform but also to highlight the collaborative nature of the operation theatre environment. It is a place where the safety and well-being of the patient are paramount, and where every team member—whether in the front or behind the scenes—plays a critical role in ensuring success.

As you read through *Essentials of Operation Theatre*, I hope you will gain a deep appreciation for the intricacies of this high-stakes environment. The knowledge and insights shared in this book are intended to provide a solid foundation for those looking to enter this field, as well as a valuable reference for experienced professionals seeking to refine their skills and improve the quality of care in their operating theatres.

This book is a tribute to the dedication, precision, and teamwork that define the essence of surgery and the operation theatre, and I hope it inspires everyone involved to continuously strive for excellence in the pursuit of better patient care.

—Editor

Contents

Preface	v
1. Bacteria	1
<i>Mr. Bhavesh Bhatia</i>	
2. Catheter-Associated Urinary Tract Infection	11
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
3. Diagnostic Test	19
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
4. Emergency/Casualty Department	29
<i>Ms. Shakha Patel</i>	
5. Hospital Infection Prevention and Control	33
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
6. ICU	47
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
7. Isolation Precautions	50
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
8. Micro-Organisms	61
<i>Mr. Chetak Patel</i>	
9. Microbial Growth	68
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
10. Microbial Nutrition and Growth	79
<i>Mr. Bhavesh Bhatia</i>	
11. NICU	88
<i>Ms. Pooja Patel</i>	
12. OT	92
<i>Ms. Shakha Patel</i>	

13. Oxygen Administration	96
<i>Mr. Bhavesh Bhatia</i>	
14. Parasites and Fectors	104
<i>Mr. Chetak Patel</i>	
15. Pathogenic Fungus	121
<i>Renu Susan Varghese</i>	
16. PICU	127
<i>Ms. Shakha Patel</i>	
17. Pressure Ulcer	131
<i>Mr. Chetak Patel</i>	
18. Sterilization and Disinfection	145
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
19. VIRUS	164
<i>Renu Susan Varghese</i>	

1

Bacteria

Mr. Bhavesh Bhatia¹

MICROORGANISM

- Micro means small, very small, can't see by naked eyes.
- Which can be seen by using electron microscope.

Classification of Microorganism

- All living organisms are classified into the five kingdoms of life:
 1. Monera
 2. Protista
 3. Fungi
 4. Plantae

Kingdom Monera

- Monera is non-nucleated unicellular organisms.
- They are prokaryotes.
- They have a cell wall. They have no membrane-bound organelles such as mitochondria, Golgi complex.
- They lack a true nucleus. Instead, they have nucleoid, genetic material without a nuclear membrane.
- Examples include Bacteria, cyanophyceae (Blue-Green algae), Nitrogen-fixing organisms etc.

Kingdom Monera Some examples include:

-
1. Nursing Tutor, AION

ESSENTIALS OF OPERATION THEATRE

ESSENTIALS OF OPERATION THEATRE

Editor

Prof. Sejal Patel

MARK PUBLISHERS
JAIPUR

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Essentials of Operation Theatre

Editor : Prof. Sejal Patel

Edition : 2020

ISBN : 978-81-89472-34-4

Published by:

Mark Publishers

Jaipur

Exclusive Distributor:

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,
Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,
Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by:

In-house

Preface

The operating theatre is one of the most critical environments in the healthcare system, where precision, expertise, and teamwork come together to save lives and improve patient outcomes. Behind every successful surgery lies not only the skill of the surgeon but also the seamless coordination of all the professionals and resources within the operation theatre. *Essentials of Operation Theatre* is written to provide an in-depth guide to the principles, practices, and protocols that ensure the smooth functioning of this vital space.

This book serves as a comprehensive resource for anyone involved in the operation theatre environment—whether they are surgeons, anesthesiologists, nurses, technicians, or students. It brings together key aspects of operation theatre management, focusing on the technical, logistical, and safety measures that are essential for maintaining a high standard of care.

From understanding the layout and design of the operating room to the roles of different healthcare professionals, *Essentials of Operation Theatre* emphasizes the importance of hygiene, sterilization, equipment handling, patient safety, and effective communication. It also provides a clear understanding of the surgical workflow, from patient preparation to post-operative care, highlighting the importance of efficiency and attention to detail in ensuring positive outcomes.

The book is divided into easy-to-follow sections, starting with the fundamental principles of operation theatre management, including the anatomy of the operating room, infection control practices, and the preparation of the surgical team and instruments. It then delves into specific surgical procedures, offering guidelines for various types of surgeries, including general, orthopedic, cardiac, and specialized fields. Each

chapter includes practical tips, case studies, and real-world examples to illustrate the best practices and challenges faced in the operating room.

In writing this book, the goal is not only to educate and inform but also to highlight the collaborative nature of the operation theatre environment. It is a place where the safety and well-being of the patient are paramount, and where every team member—whether in the front or behind the scenes—plays a critical role in ensuring success.

As you read through *Essentials of Operation Theatre*, I hope you will gain a deep appreciation for the intricacies of this high-stakes environment. The knowledge and insights shared in this book are intended to provide a solid foundation for those looking to enter this field, as well as a valuable reference for experienced professionals seeking to refine their skills and improve the quality of care in their operating theatres.

This book is a tribute to the dedication, precision, and teamwork that define the essence of surgery and the operation theatre, and I hope it inspires everyone involved to continuously strive for excellence in the pursuit of better patient care.

—Editor

Contents

Preface	v
1. Bacteria	1
<i>Mr. Bhavesh Bhatia</i>	
2. Catheter-Associated Urinary Tract Infection	11
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
3. Diagnostic Test	19
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
4. Emergency/Casualty Department	29
<i>Ms. Shakha Patel</i>	
5. Hospital Infection Prevention and Control	33
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
6. ICU	47
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
7. Isolation Precautions	50
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
8. Micro-Organisms	61
<i>Mr. Chetak Patel</i>	
9. Microbial Growth	68
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
10. Microbial Nutrition and Growth	79
<i>Mr. Bhavesh Bhatia</i>	
11. NICU	88
<i>Ms. Pooja Patel</i>	
12. OT	92
<i>Ms. Shakha Patel</i>	

13. Oxygen Administration	96
<i>Mr. Bhavesh Bhatia</i>	
14. Parasites and Fectors	104
<i>Mr. Chetak Patel</i>	
15. Pathogenic Fungus	121
<i>Renu Susan Varghese</i>	
16. PICU	127
<i>Ms. Shakha Patel</i>	
17. Pressure Ulcer	131
<i>Mr. Chetak Patel</i>	
18. Sterilization and Disinfection	145
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
19. VIRUS	164
<i>Renu Susan Varghese</i>	

2

Catheter-Associated Urinary Tract Infection

Ms. Nidhi Chauhan¹

Introduction

Urinary tract infections (UTIs) are one of the commonest types of HCAs. One of the common reasons is the use of urinary catheters.

Indications for Catheterization

Placement of an indwelling catheter should be performed only when indicated. It should be removed as soon as possible.

The accepted indications for catheterization are:

- Patient requiring prolonged immobilization, such as in the setting of unstable lumbar/thoracic spine injuries, or multiple traumatic injuries including pelvic fracture For short-term (days) management of incontinence (the inability to control urination) needed to assist in healing of sacral or perineal wounds or for retention (the inability to pass urine) not helped by other methods.
- To measure urine output over several days in critically ill patients For treatment of bladder outlet obstruction For post-operative management of surgical patients with impaired bladder function.

1. Nursing Tutor, AION

ESSENTIALS OF OPERATION THEATRE

ESSENTIALS OF OPERATION THEATRE

Editor

Prof. Sejal Patel

MARK PUBLISHERS
JAIPUR

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Essentials of Operation Theatre

Editor : Prof. Sejal Patel

Edition : 2020

ISBN : 978-81-89472-34-4

Published by:

Mark Publishers

Jaipur

Exclusive Distributor:

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,
Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,
Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by:

In-house

Preface

The operating theatre is one of the most critical environments in the healthcare system, where precision, expertise, and teamwork come together to save lives and improve patient outcomes. Behind every successful surgery lies not only the skill of the surgeon but also the seamless coordination of all the professionals and resources within the operation theatre. *Essentials of Operation Theatre* is written to provide an in-depth guide to the principles, practices, and protocols that ensure the smooth functioning of this vital space.

This book serves as a comprehensive resource for anyone involved in the operation theatre environment—whether they are surgeons, anesthesiologists, nurses, technicians, or students. It brings together key aspects of operation theatre management, focusing on the technical, logistical, and safety measures that are essential for maintaining a high standard of care.

From understanding the layout and design of the operating room to the roles of different healthcare professionals, *Essentials of Operation Theatre* emphasizes the importance of hygiene, sterilization, equipment handling, patient safety, and effective communication. It also provides a clear understanding of the surgical workflow, from patient preparation to post-operative care, highlighting the importance of efficiency and attention to detail in ensuring positive outcomes.

The book is divided into easy-to-follow sections, starting with the fundamental principles of operation theatre management, including the anatomy of the operating room, infection control practices, and the preparation of the surgical team and instruments. It then delves into specific surgical procedures, offering guidelines for various types of surgeries, including general, orthopedic, cardiac, and specialized fields. Each

chapter includes practical tips, case studies, and real-world examples to illustrate the best practices and challenges faced in the operating room.

In writing this book, the goal is not only to educate and inform but also to highlight the collaborative nature of the operation theatre environment. It is a place where the safety and well-being of the patient are paramount, and where every team member—whether in the front or behind the scenes—plays a critical role in ensuring success.

As you read through *Essentials of Operation Theatre*, I hope you will gain a deep appreciation for the intricacies of this high-stakes environment. The knowledge and insights shared in this book are intended to provide a solid foundation for those looking to enter this field, as well as a valuable reference for experienced professionals seeking to refine their skills and improve the quality of care in their operating theatres.

This book is a tribute to the dedication, precision, and teamwork that define the essence of surgery and the operation theatre, and I hope it inspires everyone involved to continuously strive for excellence in the pursuit of better patient care.

—Editor

Contents

Preface	v
1. Bacteria	1
<i>Mr. Bhavesh Bhatia</i>	
2. Catheter-Associated Urinary Tract Infection	11
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
3. Diagnostic Test	19
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
4. Emergency/Casualty Department	29
<i>Ms. Shakha Patel</i>	
5. Hospital Infection Prevention and Control	33
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
6. ICU	47
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
7. Isolation Precautions	50
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
8. Micro-Organisms	61
<i>Mr. Chetak Patel</i>	
9. Microbial Growth	68
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
10. Microbial Nutrition and Growth	79
<i>Mr. Bhavesh Bhatia</i>	
11. NICU	88
<i>Ms. Pooja Patel</i>	
12. OT	92
<i>Ms. Shakha Patel</i>	

13. Oxygen Administration	96
<i>Mr. Bhavesh Bhatia</i>	
14. Parasites and Fectors	104
<i>Mr. Chetak Patel</i>	
15. Pathogenic Fungus	121
<i>Renu Susan Varghese</i>	
16. PICU	127
<i>Ms. Shakha Patel</i>	
17. Pressure Ulcer	131
<i>Mr. Chetak Patel</i>	
18. Sterilization and Disinfection	145
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
19. VIRUS	164
<i>Renu Susan Varghese</i>	

3

Diagnostic Test

Ms. Jacinta Vasava¹

Preparing a client for diagnostic testing Phases of diagnostic testing

1. Pre test
2. Intra test
3. Post test

Pre test

- Identity band
- Medical record for herbal supplements, allergies or prior reactions to dyes, contrast media, if so mention it in the file
- Consent
- Any physical or communication restriction
- Vital signs
- Orders - NPO, any premedications, dosage etc
- Physical and Psychological preparation
- Explanation of procedure
- If any IV access required, establish it o In case of pediatrics, accompany the attender

Intra test

- Invasive diagnosis- protective barrier to be worn
- Positioning and draping
- oIn dye administration, skin allergy test to be conducted
- Relax the client during procedure

1. Nursing Tutor, AION

ESSENTIALS OF OPERATION THEATRE

ESSENTIALS OF OPERATION THEATRE

Editor

Prof. Sejal Patel

MARK PUBLISHERS
JAIPUR

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Essentials of Operation Theatre

Editor : Prof. Sejal Patel

Edition : 2020

ISBN : 978-81-89472-34-4

Published by:

Mark Publishers

Jaipur

Exclusive Distributor:

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,
Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,
Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by:

In-house

Preface

The operating theatre is one of the most critical environments in the healthcare system, where precision, expertise, and teamwork come together to save lives and improve patient outcomes. Behind every successful surgery lies not only the skill of the surgeon but also the seamless coordination of all the professionals and resources within the operation theatre. *Essentials of Operation Theatre* is written to provide an in-depth guide to the principles, practices, and protocols that ensure the smooth functioning of this vital space.

This book serves as a comprehensive resource for anyone involved in the operation theatre environment—whether they are surgeons, anesthesiologists, nurses, technicians, or students. It brings together key aspects of operation theatre management, focusing on the technical, logistical, and safety measures that are essential for maintaining a high standard of care.

From understanding the layout and design of the operating room to the roles of different healthcare professionals, *Essentials of Operation Theatre* emphasizes the importance of hygiene, sterilization, equipment handling, patient safety, and effective communication. It also provides a clear understanding of the surgical workflow, from patient preparation to post-operative care, highlighting the importance of efficiency and attention to detail in ensuring positive outcomes.

The book is divided into easy-to-follow sections, starting with the fundamental principles of operation theatre management, including the anatomy of the operating room, infection control practices, and the preparation of the surgical team and instruments. It then delves into specific surgical procedures, offering guidelines for various types of surgeries, including general, orthopedic, cardiac, and specialized fields. Each

chapter includes practical tips, case studies, and real-world examples to illustrate the best practices and challenges faced in the operating room.

In writing this book, the goal is not only to educate and inform but also to highlight the collaborative nature of the operation theatre environment. It is a place where the safety and well-being of the patient are paramount, and where every team member—whether in the front or behind the scenes—plays a critical role in ensuring success.

As you read through *Essentials of Operation Theatre*, I hope you will gain a deep appreciation for the intricacies of this high-stakes environment. The knowledge and insights shared in this book are intended to provide a solid foundation for those looking to enter this field, as well as a valuable reference for experienced professionals seeking to refine their skills and improve the quality of care in their operating theatres.

This book is a tribute to the dedication, precision, and teamwork that define the essence of surgery and the operation theatre, and I hope it inspires everyone involved to continuously strive for excellence in the pursuit of better patient care.

—Editor

Contents

Preface	v
1. Bacteria	1
<i>Mr. Bhavesh Bhatia</i>	
2. Catheter-Associated Urinary Tract Infection	11
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
3. Diagnostic Test	19
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
4. Emergency/Casualty Department	29
<i>Ms. Shakha Patel</i>	
5. Hospital Infection Prevention and Control	33
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
6. ICU	47
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
7. Isolation Precautions	50
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
8. Micro-Organisms	61
<i>Mr. Chetak Patel</i>	
9. Microbial Growth	68
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
10. Microbial Nutrition and Growth	79
<i>Mr. Bhavesh Bhatia</i>	
11. NICU	88
<i>Ms. Pooja Patel</i>	
12. OT	92
<i>Ms. Shakha Patel</i>	

13. Oxygen Administration	96
<i>Mr. Bhavesh Bhatia</i>	
14. Parasites and Fectors	104
<i>Mr. Chetak Patel</i>	
15. Pathogenic Fungus	121
<i>Renu Susan Varghese</i>	
16. PICU	127
<i>Ms. Shakha Patel</i>	
17. Pressure Ulcer	131
<i>Mr. Chetak Patel</i>	
18. Sterilization and Disinfection	145
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
19. VIRUS	164
<i>Renu Susan Varghese</i>	

4

Emergency/Casualty Department

Ms. Shakha Patel¹

1. Purpose and Function

a. Purpose

- **Immediate Care:** The primary goal of the Casualty Department is to provide prompt and effective care to individuals experiencing urgent or emergency medical conditions.
- **Emergency Response:** It acts as the first point of contact for patients with life-threatening situations, severe injuries, or sudden medical conditions.

b. Function

- **Rapid Assessment:** Quickly assess the severity of patients' conditions to prioritize treatment based on the urgency of their needs.
- **Stabilization and Treatment:** Stabilize patients, provide initial treatment, and determine if further care is needed, either in the hospital or through referral to specialized care.

2. Structure and Facilities

a. Triage Area

- **Initial Assessment:** The triage area is where patients are first assessed upon arrival. Triage nurses evaluate the urgency of each case and prioritize treatment based on severity (using systems like the Emergency Severity Index or the Manchester Triage System).

b. Examination Rooms

- **Diagnostic and Treatment Areas:** Equipped for physical examinations and initial treatments. These rooms are

1. Nursing Tutor, Aarohant Institute of Nursing

ESSENTIALS OF OPERATION THEATRE

ESSENTIALS OF OPERATION THEATRE

Editor

Prof. Sejal Patel

MARK PUBLISHERS
JAIPUR

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Essentials of Operation Theatre

Editor : Prof. Sejal Patel

Edition : 2020

ISBN : 978-81-89472-34-4

Published by:

Mark Publishers

Jaipur

Exclusive Distributor:

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,
Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,
Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by:

In-house

Preface

The operating theatre is one of the most critical environments in the healthcare system, where precision, expertise, and teamwork come together to save lives and improve patient outcomes. Behind every successful surgery lies not only the skill of the surgeon but also the seamless coordination of all the professionals and resources within the operation theatre. *Essentials of Operation Theatre* is written to provide an in-depth guide to the principles, practices, and protocols that ensure the smooth functioning of this vital space.

This book serves as a comprehensive resource for anyone involved in the operation theatre environment—whether they are surgeons, anesthesiologists, nurses, technicians, or students. It brings together key aspects of operation theatre management, focusing on the technical, logistical, and safety measures that are essential for maintaining a high standard of care.

From understanding the layout and design of the operating room to the roles of different healthcare professionals, *Essentials of Operation Theatre* emphasizes the importance of hygiene, sterilization, equipment handling, patient safety, and effective communication. It also provides a clear understanding of the surgical workflow, from patient preparation to post-operative care, highlighting the importance of efficiency and attention to detail in ensuring positive outcomes.

The book is divided into easy-to-follow sections, starting with the fundamental principles of operation theatre management, including the anatomy of the operating room, infection control practices, and the preparation of the surgical team and instruments. It then delves into specific surgical procedures, offering guidelines for various types of surgeries, including general, orthopedic, cardiac, and specialized fields. Each

chapter includes practical tips, case studies, and real-world examples to illustrate the best practices and challenges faced in the operating room.

In writing this book, the goal is not only to educate and inform but also to highlight the collaborative nature of the operation theatre environment. It is a place where the safety and well-being of the patient are paramount, and where every team member—whether in the front or behind the scenes—plays a critical role in ensuring success.

As you read through *Essentials of Operation Theatre*, I hope you will gain a deep appreciation for the intricacies of this high-stakes environment. The knowledge and insights shared in this book are intended to provide a solid foundation for those looking to enter this field, as well as a valuable reference for experienced professionals seeking to refine their skills and improve the quality of care in their operating theatres.

This book is a tribute to the dedication, precision, and teamwork that define the essence of surgery and the operation theatre, and I hope it inspires everyone involved to continuously strive for excellence in the pursuit of better patient care.

—Editor

Contents

Preface	v
1. Bacteria	1
<i>Mr. Bhavesh Bhatia</i>	
2. Catheter-Associated Urinary Tract Infection	11
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
3. Diagnostic Test	19
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
4. Emergency/Casualty Department	29
<i>Ms. Shakha Patel</i>	
5. Hospital Infection Prevention and Control	33
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
6. ICU	47
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
7. Isolation Precautions	50
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
8. Micro-Organisms	61
<i>Mr. Chetak Patel</i>	
9. Microbial Growth	68
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
10. Microbial Nutrition and Growth	79
<i>Mr. Bhavesh Bhatia</i>	
11. NICU	88
<i>Ms. Pooja Patel</i>	
12. OT	92
<i>Ms. Shakha Patel</i>	

13. Oxygen Administration	96
<i>Mr. Bhavesh Bhatia</i>	
14. Parasites and Fectors	104
<i>Mr. Chetak Patel</i>	
15. Pathogenic Fungus	121
<i>Renu Susan Varghese</i>	
16. PICU	127
<i>Ms. Shakha Patel</i>	
17. Pressure Ulcer	131
<i>Mr. Chetak Patel</i>	
18. Sterilization and Disinfection	145
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
19. VIRUS	164
<i>Renu Susan Varghese</i>	

5

Hospital Infection Prevention and Control

Ms. Saloni Patel¹

INTRODUCTION

- Healthcare-associated infection (HCAI) is one of the most common complications of health care management. It is a serious health hazard as it leads to increased patients' morbidity and mortality, length of hospital stay and the costs associated with hospital stay.
- Effective infection prevention and control is central to providing high quality health care for patients and a safe working environment for those that work in healthcare settings.
- It is important to minimize the risk of spread of infection to patients and staff in hospital by implementing good infection control programme.
- This document outlines the broad principles and practices of infection Control that are essential for the prevention and management of infection.
- The following Hospital Infection Control Policies are needed to be framed and practiced and monitored by the Hospital Infection Control Team (HICT) and Hospital Infection Control Committee (HICC).
 1. Guidelines for prevention & control of infections
 2. Antimicrobial policy

1. Nursing Tutor, AION

ESSENTIALS OF OPERATION THEATRE

ESSENTIALS OF OPERATION THEATRE

Editor

Prof. Sejal Patel

**MARK PUBLISHERS
JAIPUR**

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Essentials of Operation Theatre

Editor : Prof. Sejal Patel

Edition : 2020

ISBN : 978-81-89472-34-4

Published by:

Mark Publishers

Jaipur

Exclusive Distributor:

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,
Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,
Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by:

In-house

Preface

The operating theatre is one of the most critical environments in the healthcare system, where precision, expertise, and teamwork come together to save lives and improve patient outcomes. Behind every successful surgery lies not only the skill of the surgeon but also the seamless coordination of all the professionals and resources within the operation theatre. *Essentials of Operation Theatre* is written to provide an in-depth guide to the principles, practices, and protocols that ensure the smooth functioning of this vital space.

This book serves as a comprehensive resource for anyone involved in the operation theatre environment—whether they are surgeons, anesthesiologists, nurses, technicians, or students. It brings together key aspects of operation theatre management, focusing on the technical, logistical, and safety measures that are essential for maintaining a high standard of care.

From understanding the layout and design of the operating room to the roles of different healthcare professionals, *Essentials of Operation Theatre* emphasizes the importance of hygiene, sterilization, equipment handling, patient safety, and effective communication. It also provides a clear understanding of the surgical workflow, from patient preparation to post-operative care, highlighting the importance of efficiency and attention to detail in ensuring positive outcomes.

The book is divided into easy-to-follow sections, starting with the fundamental principles of operation theatre management, including the anatomy of the operating room, infection control practices, and the preparation of the surgical team and instruments. It then delves into specific surgical procedures, offering guidelines for various types of surgeries, including general, orthopedic, cardiac, and specialized fields. Each

chapter includes practical tips, case studies, and real-world examples to illustrate the best practices and challenges faced in the operating room.

In writing this book, the goal is not only to educate and inform but also to highlight the collaborative nature of the operation theatre environment. It is a place where the safety and well-being of the patient are paramount, and where every team member—whether in the front or behind the scenes—plays a critical role in ensuring success.

As you read through *Essentials of Operation Theatre*, I hope you will gain a deep appreciation for the intricacies of this high-stakes environment. The knowledge and insights shared in this book are intended to provide a solid foundation for those looking to enter this field, as well as a valuable reference for experienced professionals seeking to refine their skills and improve the quality of care in their operating theatres.

This book is a tribute to the dedication, precision, and teamwork that define the essence of surgery and the operation theatre, and I hope it inspires everyone involved to continuously strive for excellence in the pursuit of better patient care.

—Editor

Contents

Preface	v
1. Bacteria	1
<i>Mr. Bhavesh Bhatia</i>	
2. Catheter-Associated Urinary Tract Infection	11
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
3. Diagnostic Test	19
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
4. Emergency/Casualty Department	29
<i>Ms. Shakha Patel</i>	
5. Hospital Infection Prevention and Control	33
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
6. ICU	47
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
7. Isolation Precautions	50
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
8. Micro-Organisms	61
<i>Mr. Chetak Patel</i>	
9. Microbial Growth	68
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
10. Microbial Nutrition and Growth	79
<i>Mr. Bhavesh Bhatia</i>	
11. NICU	88
<i>Ms. Pooja Patel</i>	
12. OT	92
<i>Ms. Shakha Patel</i>	

13. Oxygen Administration	96
<i>Mr. Bhavesh Bhatia</i>	
14. Parasites and Fectors	104
<i>Mr. Chetak Patel</i>	
15. Pathogenic Fungus	121
<i>Renu Susan Varghese</i>	
16. PICU	127
<i>Ms. Shakha Patel</i>	
17. Pressure Ulcer	131
<i>Mr. Chetak Patel</i>	
18. Sterilization and Disinfection	145
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
19. VIRUS	164
<i>Renu Susan Varghese</i>	

6

ICU

Ms. Sejal Patel¹

1. Purpose and Function of the ICU

a. Intensive Monitoring

- **Continuous Surveillance:** ICUs are equipped with advanced technology to monitor patients' vital signs, such as heart rate, blood pressure, respiratory rate, and oxygen levels, on a continuous basis.
- **Real-Time Data:** This allows for real-time data collection and rapid response to changes in the patient's condition.

b. Specialized Care

- **Critical Conditions:** ICUs manage patients with severe medical conditions that require close observation and intervention, including respiratory failure, cardiac arrest, severe infections, trauma, and multi-organ failure.
- **Advanced Treatments:** The unit provides access to advanced treatments and interventions that are not available in general hospital wards.

2. Structure and Environment

a. Physical Layout

- **Bedside Monitors:** Each patient typically has a bedside monitor that tracks their vital signs and can alert staff to any immediate concerns.
- **Advanced Equipment:** Includes ventilators, dialysis machines, infusion pumps, and specialized monitoring devices.

b. Staffing

1. Nursing tutor, Aarohant Institute of Nursing

ESSENTIALS OF OPERATION THEATRE

ESSENTIALS OF OPERATION THEATRE

Editor

Prof. Sejal Patel

**MARK PUBLISHERS
JAIPUR**

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Essentials of Operation Theatre

Editor : Prof. Sejal Patel

Edition : 2020

ISBN : 978-81-89472-34-4

Published by:

Mark Publishers

Jaipur

Exclusive Distributor:

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,
Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,
Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by:

In-house

Preface

The operating theatre is one of the most critical environments in the healthcare system, where precision, expertise, and teamwork come together to save lives and improve patient outcomes. Behind every successful surgery lies not only the skill of the surgeon but also the seamless coordination of all the professionals and resources within the operation theatre. *Essentials of Operation Theatre* is written to provide an in-depth guide to the principles, practices, and protocols that ensure the smooth functioning of this vital space.

This book serves as a comprehensive resource for anyone involved in the operation theatre environment—whether they are surgeons, anesthesiologists, nurses, technicians, or students. It brings together key aspects of operation theatre management, focusing on the technical, logistical, and safety measures that are essential for maintaining a high standard of care.

From understanding the layout and design of the operating room to the roles of different healthcare professionals, *Essentials of Operation Theatre* emphasizes the importance of hygiene, sterilization, equipment handling, patient safety, and effective communication. It also provides a clear understanding of the surgical workflow, from patient preparation to post-operative care, highlighting the importance of efficiency and attention to detail in ensuring positive outcomes.

The book is divided into easy-to-follow sections, starting with the fundamental principles of operation theatre management, including the anatomy of the operating room, infection control practices, and the preparation of the surgical team and instruments. It then delves into specific surgical procedures, offering guidelines for various types of surgeries, including general, orthopedic, cardiac, and specialized fields. Each

chapter includes practical tips, case studies, and real-world examples to illustrate the best practices and challenges faced in the operating room.

In writing this book, the goal is not only to educate and inform but also to highlight the collaborative nature of the operation theatre environment. It is a place where the safety and well-being of the patient are paramount, and where every team member—whether in the front or behind the scenes—plays a critical role in ensuring success.

As you read through *Essentials of Operation Theatre*, I hope you will gain a deep appreciation for the intricacies of this high-stakes environment. The knowledge and insights shared in this book are intended to provide a solid foundation for those looking to enter this field, as well as a valuable reference for experienced professionals seeking to refine their skills and improve the quality of care in their operating theatres.

This book is a tribute to the dedication, precision, and teamwork that define the essence of surgery and the operation theatre, and I hope it inspires everyone involved to continuously strive for excellence in the pursuit of better patient care.

— Editor

Contents

Preface	v
1. Bacteria	1
<i>Mr. Bhavesh Bhatia</i>	
2. Catheter-Associated Urinary Tract Infection	11
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
3. Diagnostic Test	19
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
4. Emergency/Casualty Department	29
<i>Ms. Shakha Patel</i>	
5. Hospital Infection Prevention and Control	33
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
6. ICU	47
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
7. Isolation Precautions	50
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
8. Micro-Organisms	61
<i>Mr. Chetak Patel</i>	
9. Microbial Growth	68
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
10. Microbial Nutrition and Growth	79
<i>Mr. Bhavesh Bhatia</i>	
11. NICU	88
<i>Ms. Pooja Patel</i>	
12. OT	92
<i>Ms. Shakha Patel</i>	

13. Oxygen Administration	96
<i>Mr. Bhavesh Bhatia</i>	
14. Parasites and Fectors	104
<i>Mr. Chetak Patel</i>	
15. Pathogenic Fungus	121
<i>Renu Susan Varghese</i>	
16. PICU	127
<i>Ms. Shakha Patel</i>	
17. Pressure Ulcer	131
<i>Mr. Chetak Patel</i>	
18. Sterilization and Disinfection	145
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
19. VIRUS	164
<i>Renu Susan Varghese</i>	

7

Isolation Precautions

Ms. Nidhi Chauhan¹

Introduction

- Isolation precautions are needed to prevent the transmission of pathogenic microorganisms within the healthcare setting.
- The patients of following disease categories should be treated under isolation.
- Severe influenza cases, Subacute respiratory Syndrome (SARS), Open case of tuberculosis, Anthrax, diphtheria, Pertussis, Pneumonic plague, Chicken pox, and patients infected with multidrug resistant bacterial pathogens.

Patient placement

- Appropriate patient placement is a significant component of isolation precautions.

Determine patient placement based on the following principles:

1. - Route(s) of transmission of the infectious agent
2. - Risk factors for transmission in the infected patient
3. - Risk factors for adverse outcomes resulting from healthcare-
4. associated infection in other patients in the area.
5. - Availability of single-patient rooms
6. - Patient options for room-sharing

1. Nursing Tutor, AION

ESSENTIALS OF OPERATION THEATRE

ESSENTIALS OF OPERATION THEATRE

Editor

Prof. Sejal Patel

**MARK PUBLISHERS
JAIPUR**

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Essentials of Operation Theatre

Editor : Prof. Sejal Patel

Edition : 2020

ISBN : 978-81-89472-34-4

Published by:

Mark Publishers

Jaipur

Exclusive Distributor:

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,
Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,
Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by:

In-house

Preface

The operating theatre is one of the most critical environments in the healthcare system, where precision, expertise, and teamwork come together to save lives and improve patient outcomes. Behind every successful surgery lies not only the skill of the surgeon but also the seamless coordination of all the professionals and resources within the operation theatre. *Essentials of Operation Theatre* is written to provide an in-depth guide to the principles, practices, and protocols that ensure the smooth functioning of this vital space.

This book serves as a comprehensive resource for anyone involved in the operation theatre environment—whether they are surgeons, anesthesiologists, nurses, technicians, or students. It brings together key aspects of operation theatre management, focusing on the technical, logistical, and safety measures that are essential for maintaining a high standard of care.

From understanding the layout and design of the operating room to the roles of different healthcare professionals, *Essentials of Operation Theatre* emphasizes the importance of hygiene, sterilization, equipment handling, patient safety, and effective communication. It also provides a clear understanding of the surgical workflow, from patient preparation to post-operative care, highlighting the importance of efficiency and attention to detail in ensuring positive outcomes.

The book is divided into easy-to-follow sections, starting with the fundamental principles of operation theatre management, including the anatomy of the operating room, infection control practices, and the preparation of the surgical team and instruments. It then delves into specific surgical procedures, offering guidelines for various types of surgeries, including general, orthopedic, cardiac, and specialized fields. Each

chapter includes practical tips, case studies, and real-world examples to illustrate the best practices and challenges faced in the operating room.

In writing this book, the goal is not only to educate and inform but also to highlight the collaborative nature of the operation theatre environment. It is a place where the safety and well-being of the patient are paramount, and where every team member—whether in the front or behind the scenes—plays a critical role in ensuring success.

As you read through *Essentials of Operation Theatre*, I hope you will gain a deep appreciation for the intricacies of this high-stakes environment. The knowledge and insights shared in this book are intended to provide a solid foundation for those looking to enter this field, as well as a valuable reference for experienced professionals seeking to refine their skills and improve the quality of care in their operating theatres.

This book is a tribute to the dedication, precision, and teamwork that define the essence of surgery and the operation theatre, and I hope it inspires everyone involved to continuously strive for excellence in the pursuit of better patient care.

—Editor

Contents

Preface	v
1. Bacteria	1
<i>Mr. Bhavesh Bhatia</i>	
2. Catheter-Associated Urinary Tract Infection	11
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
3. Diagnostic Test	19
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
4. Emergency/Casualty Department	29
<i>Ms. Shakha Patel</i>	
5. Hospital Infection Prevention and Control	33
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
6. ICU	47
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
7. Isolation Precautions	50
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
8. Micro-Organisms	61
<i>Mr. Chetak Patel</i>	
9. Microbial Growth	68
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
10. Microbial Nutrition and Growth	79
<i>Mr. Bhavesh Bhatia</i>	
11. NICU	88
<i>Ms. Pooja Patel</i>	
12. OT	92
<i>Ms. Shakha Patel</i>	

13. Oxygen Administration	96
<i>Mr. Bhavesh Bhatia</i>	
14. Parasites and Fectors	104
<i>Mr. Chetak Patel</i>	
15. Pathogenic Fungus	121
<i>Renu Susan Varghese</i>	
16. PICU	127
<i>Ms. Shakha Patel</i>	
17. Pressure Ulcer	131
<i>Mr. Chetak Patel</i>	
18. Sterilization and Disinfection	145
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
19. VIRUS	164
<i>Renu Susan Varghese</i>	

8

Micro-Organisms

Mr. Chetak Patel¹

Micro-organisms, in relation to food, can have one of these 3 roles:

- Pathogenic micro-organisms can cause infections or intoxications
- Saprophytic micro-organism play a role in biodegradation and cause foodspoilage
- Cultured micro-organisms like probiotic bacteria are used in food processing.

Pathogenic Micro-Organisms

- Pathogenic micro-organisms cause food-borne infections or intoxication, and include bacteria, viruses, parasites and moulds. It is important to note that pathogenic bacteria and viruses usually do not cause food spoilage, their contamination cannot be seen nor tasted.
- The main factors that contribute to occurrence of foodborne diseases are:
 - The use of raw food and ingredients from unsafe sources
 - Inadequate cooking or heat processing
 - Improper cooling and storing, for example leaving cooked foods at room temperature for longer periods of time, or storing foods in large containers in the fridge
 - Allowing several hours to pass between preparation and eating of food
 - Inadequate reheating

1. Nursing Tutor, AION

ESSENTIALS OF OPERATION THEATRE

ESSENTIALS OF OPERATION THEATRE

Editor

Prof. Sejal Patel

MARK PUBLISHERS
JAIPUR

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Essentials of Operation Theatre

Editor : Prof. Sejal Patel

Edition : 2020

ISBN : 978-81-89472-34-4

Published by:

Mark Publishers

Jaipur

Exclusive Distributor:

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,
Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,
Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by:

In-house

Preface

The operating theatre is one of the most critical environments in the healthcare system, where precision, expertise, and teamwork come together to save lives and improve patient outcomes. Behind every successful surgery lies not only the skill of the surgeon but also the seamless coordination of all the professionals and resources within the operation theatre. *Essentials of Operation Theatre* is written to provide an in-depth guide to the principles, practices, and protocols that ensure the smooth functioning of this vital space.

This book serves as a comprehensive resource for anyone involved in the operation theatre environment—whether they are surgeons, anesthesiologists, nurses, technicians, or students. It brings together key aspects of operation theatre management, focusing on the technical, logistical, and safety measures that are essential for maintaining a high standard of care.

From understanding the layout and design of the operating room to the roles of different healthcare professionals, *Essentials of Operation Theatre* emphasizes the importance of hygiene, sterilization, equipment handling, patient safety, and effective communication. It also provides a clear understanding of the surgical workflow, from patient preparation to post-operative care, highlighting the importance of efficiency and attention to detail in ensuring positive outcomes.

The book is divided into easy-to-follow sections, starting with the fundamental principles of operation theatre management, including the anatomy of the operating room, infection control practices, and the preparation of the surgical team and instruments. It then delves into specific surgical procedures, offering guidelines for various types of surgeries, including general, orthopedic, cardiac, and specialized fields. Each

chapter includes practical tips, case studies, and real-world examples to illustrate the best practices and challenges faced in the operating room.

In writing this book, the goal is not only to educate and inform but also to highlight the collaborative nature of the operation theatre environment. It is a place where the safety and well-being of the patient are paramount, and where every team member—whether in the front or behind the scenes—plays a critical role in ensuring success.

As you read through *Essentials of Operation Theatre*, I hope you will gain a deep appreciation for the intricacies of this high-stakes environment. The knowledge and insights shared in this book are intended to provide a solid foundation for those looking to enter this field, as well as a valuable reference for experienced professionals seeking to refine their skills and improve the quality of care in their operating theatres.

This book is a tribute to the dedication, precision, and teamwork that define the essence of surgery and the operation theatre, and I hope it inspires everyone involved to continuously strive for excellence in the pursuit of better patient care.

— Editor

Contents

Preface	v
1. Bacteria	1
<i>Mr. Bhavesh Bhatia</i>	
2. Catheter-Associated Urinary Tract Infection	11
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
3. Diagnostic Test	19
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
4. Emergency/Casualty Department	29
<i>Ms. Shakha Patel</i>	
5. Hospital Infection Prevention and Control	33
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
6. ICU	47
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
7. Isolation Precautions	50
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
8. Micro-Organisms	61
<i>Mr. Chetak Patel</i>	
9. Microbial Growth	68
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
10. Microbial Nutrition and Growth	79
<i>Mr. Bhavesh Bhatia</i>	
11. NICU	88
<i>Ms. Pooja Patel</i>	
12. OT	92
<i>Ms. Shakha Patel</i>	

13. Oxygen Administration	96
<i>Mr. Bhavesh Bhatia</i>	
14. Parasites and Fectors	104
<i>Mr. Chetak Patel</i>	
15. Pathogenic Fungus	121
<i>Renu Susan Varghese</i>	
16. PICU	127
<i>Ms. Shakha Patel</i>	
17. Pressure Ulcer	131
<i>Mr. Chetak Patel</i>	
18. Sterilization and Disinfection	145
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
19. VIRUS	164
<i>Renu Susan Varghese</i>	

9

Microbial Growth

Ms. Saloni Patel¹

- Microorganisms use nutrients to obtain energy and synthesize new cellular components.
- Nutrients are substances used in biosynthesis and energy production and are required for microbial growth.
- Most important nutrients are carbon, hydrogen, nitrogen and oxygen.
- When these microorganisms obtain their nutrients by living on or in the host, they can cause disease in the organism by interfering with their host's nutrition, metabolism and disrupt host's homeostasis

Requirements for growth

1. Physical requirements
2. Temperature
3. pH
4. Oxygen
5. Hydrostatic Pressure
6. Osmotic pressure

Chemical requirements (nutritional factors)

7. Carbon
8. Nitrogen, sulphur, and phosphorous
9. Trace elements
10. Oxygen

-
1. Nursing Tutor, AION

ESSENTIALS OF OPERATION THEATRE

ESSENTIALS OF OPERATION THEATRE

Editor

Prof. Sejal Patel

MARK PUBLISHERS
JAIPUR

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Essentials of Operation Theatre

Editor : Prof. Sejal Patel

Edition : 2020

ISBN : 978-81-89472-34-4

Published by:

Mark Publishers

Jaipur

Exclusive Distributor:

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,
Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,
Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by:

In-house

Preface

The operating theatre is one of the most critical environments in the healthcare system, where precision, expertise, and teamwork come together to save lives and improve patient outcomes. Behind every successful surgery lies not only the skill of the surgeon but also the seamless coordination of all the professionals and resources within the operation theatre. *Essentials of Operation Theatre* is written to provide an in-depth guide to the principles, practices, and protocols that ensure the smooth functioning of this vital space.

This book serves as a comprehensive resource for anyone involved in the operation theatre environment—whether they are surgeons, anesthesiologists, nurses, technicians, or students. It brings together key aspects of operation theatre management, focusing on the technical, logistical, and safety measures that are essential for maintaining a high standard of care.

From understanding the layout and design of the operating room to the roles of different healthcare professionals, *Essentials of Operation Theatre* emphasizes the importance of hygiene, sterilization, equipment handling, patient safety, and effective communication. It also provides a clear understanding of the surgical workflow, from patient preparation to post-operative care, highlighting the importance of efficiency and attention to detail in ensuring positive outcomes.

The book is divided into easy-to-follow sections, starting with the fundamental principles of operation theatre management, including the anatomy of the operating room, infection control practices, and the preparation of the surgical team and instruments. It then delves into specific surgical procedures, offering guidelines for various types of surgeries, including general, orthopedic, cardiac, and specialized fields. Each

chapter includes practical tips, case studies, and real-world examples to illustrate the best practices and challenges faced in the operating room.

In writing this book, the goal is not only to educate and inform but also to highlight the collaborative nature of the operation theatre environment. It is a place where the safety and well-being of the patient are paramount, and where every team member—whether in the front or behind the scenes—plays a critical role in ensuring success.

As you read through *Essentials of Operation Theatre*, I hope you will gain a deep appreciation for the intricacies of this high-stakes environment. The knowledge and insights shared in this book are intended to provide a solid foundation for those looking to enter this field, as well as a valuable reference for experienced professionals seeking to refine their skills and improve the quality of care in their operating theatres.

This book is a tribute to the dedication, precision, and teamwork that define the essence of surgery and the operation theatre, and I hope it inspires everyone involved to continuously strive for excellence in the pursuit of better patient care.

—Editor

Contents

Preface	v
1. Bacteria	1
<i>Mr. Bhavesh Bhatia</i>	
2. Catheter-Associated Urinary Tract Infection	11
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
3. Diagnostic Test	19
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
4. Emergency/Casualty Department	29
<i>Ms. Shakha Patel</i>	
5. Hospital Infection Prevention and Control	33
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
6. ICU	47
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
7. Isolation Precautions	50
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
8. Micro-Organisms	61
<i>Mr. Chetak Patel</i>	
9. Microbial Growth	68
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
10. Microbial Nutrition and Growth	79
<i>Mr. Bhavesh Bhatia</i>	
11. NICU	88
<i>Ms. Pooja Patel</i>	
12. OT	92
<i>Ms. Shakha Patel</i>	

13. Oxygen Administration	96
<i>Mr. Bhavesh Bhatia</i>	
14. Parasites and Fectors	104
<i>Mr. Chetak Patel</i>	
15. Pathogenic Fungus	121
<i>Renu Susan Varghese</i>	
16. PICU	127
<i>Ms. Shakha Patel</i>	
17. Pressure Ulcer	131
<i>Mr. Chetak Patel</i>	
18. Sterilization and Disinfection	145
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
19. VIRUS	164
<i>Renu Susan Varghese</i>	

10

Microbial Nutrition and Growth

Mr. Bhavesh Bhatia¹

- Microorganisms use nutrients to obtain energy and synthesize new cellular components.
- Nutrients are substances used in biosynthesis and energy production and are required for microbial growth.
- Most important nutrients are carbon, hydrogen, nitrogen and oxygen.
- When these microorganisms obtain their nutrients by living on or in the host, they can cause disease in the organism by interfering with their host's nutrition, metabolism and disrupt host's homeostasis

Requirements for growth

1. Physical requirements
2. Temperature
3. pH
4. Oxygen
5. Hydrostatic Pressure
6. Osmotic pressure

Chemical requirements (nutritional factors)

7. Carbon
8. Nitrogen, sulphur, and phosphorous
9. Trace elements

1. Nursing Tutor, AION

ESSENTIALS OF OPERATION THEATRE

ESSENTIALS OF OPERATION THEATRE

Editor

Prof. Sejal Patel

**MARK PUBLISHERS
JAIPUR**

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Essentials of Operation Theatre

Editor : Prof. Sejal Patel

Edition : 2020

ISBN : 978-81-89472-34-4

Published by:

Mark Publishers

Jaipur

Exclusive Distributor:

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,
Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,
Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by:

In-house

Preface

The operating theatre is one of the most critical environments in the healthcare system, where precision, expertise, and teamwork come together to save lives and improve patient outcomes. Behind every successful surgery lies not only the skill of the surgeon but also the seamless coordination of all the professionals and resources within the operation theatre. *Essentials of Operation Theatre* is written to provide an in-depth guide to the principles, practices, and protocols that ensure the smooth functioning of this vital space.

This book serves as a comprehensive resource for anyone involved in the operation theatre environment—whether they are surgeons, anesthesiologists, nurses, technicians, or students. It brings together key aspects of operation theatre management, focusing on the technical, logistical, and safety measures that are essential for maintaining a high standard of care.

From understanding the layout and design of the operating room to the roles of different healthcare professionals, *Essentials of Operation Theatre* emphasizes the importance of hygiene, sterilization, equipment handling, patient safety, and effective communication. It also provides a clear understanding of the surgical workflow, from patient preparation to post-operative care, highlighting the importance of efficiency and attention to detail in ensuring positive outcomes.

The book is divided into easy-to-follow sections, starting with the fundamental principles of operation theatre management, including the anatomy of the operating room, infection control practices, and the preparation of the surgical team and instruments. It then delves into specific surgical procedures, offering guidelines for various types of surgeries, including general, orthopedic, cardiac, and specialized fields. Each

chapter includes practical tips, case studies, and real-world examples to illustrate the best practices and challenges faced in the operating room.

In writing this book, the goal is not only to educate and inform but also to highlight the collaborative nature of the operation theatre environment. It is a place where the safety and well-being of the patient are paramount, and where every team member—whether in the front or behind the scenes—plays a critical role in ensuring success.

As you read through *Essentials of Operation Theatre*, I hope you will gain a deep appreciation for the intricacies of this high-stakes environment. The knowledge and insights shared in this book are intended to provide a solid foundation for those looking to enter this field, as well as a valuable reference for experienced professionals seeking to refine their skills and improve the quality of care in their operating theatres.

This book is a tribute to the dedication, precision, and teamwork that define the essence of surgery and the operation theatre, and I hope it inspires everyone involved to continuously strive for excellence in the pursuit of better patient care.

—Editor

Contents

Preface	v
1. Bacteria	1
<i>Mr. Bhavesh Bhatia</i>	
2. Catheter-Associated Urinary Tract Infection	11
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
3. Diagnostic Test	19
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
4. Emergency/Casualty Department	29
<i>Ms. Shakha Patel</i>	
5. Hospital Infection Prevention and Control	33
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
6. ICU	47
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
7. Isolation Precautions	50
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
8. Micro-Organisms	61
<i>Mr. Chetak Patel</i>	
9. Microbial Growth	68
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
10. Microbial Nutrition and Growth	79
<i>Mr. Bhavesh Bhatia</i>	
11. NICU	88
<i>Ms. Pooja Patel</i>	
12. OT	92
<i>Ms. Shakha Patel</i>	

13. Oxygen Administration	96
<i>Mr. Bhavesh Bhatia</i>	
14. Parasites and Fectors	104
<i>Mr. Chetak Patel</i>	
15. Pathogenic Fungus	121
<i>Renu Susan Varghese</i>	
16. PICU	127
<i>Ms. Shakha Patel</i>	
17. Pressure Ulcer	131
<i>Mr. Chetak Patel</i>	
18. Sterilization and Disinfection	145
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
19. VIRUS	164
<i>Renu Susan Varghese</i>	

The **Neonatal Intensive Care Unit (NICU)** is a specialized unit within a hospital dedicated to the care of critically ill or premature newborns. It provides advanced medical support and monitoring for newborns who require intensive care due to their medical conditions or birth complications. Here's a detailed overview of the NICU:

1. Purpose and Function

a. Purpose

- **Critical Care for Newborns:** The NICU provides specialized medical care for newborns who are born prematurely or have serious health issues that require intensive monitoring and intervention.
- **Support for Premature Infants:** It offers support for very young infants, particularly those born before 37 weeks of gestation, as well as those with congenital or acquired conditions.

b. Function

- **Intensive Monitoring:** Continuous monitoring of vital signs and physical conditions to manage complex health needs.
- **Advanced Treatments:** Administration of specialized treatments, medications, and interventions tailored to the unique needs of newborns.

2. Structure and Facilities

a. Incubators and Open Warmers

1. Nursing Tutor, Aarohant Institute of Nursing

ESSENTIALS OF OPERATION THEATRE

ESSENTIALS OF OPERATION THEATRE

Editor

Prof. Sejal Patel

MARK PUBLISHERS
JAIPUR

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Essentials of Operation Theatre

Editor : Prof. Sejal Patel

Edition : 2020

ISBN : 978-81-89472-34-4

Published by:

Mark Publishers

Jaipur

Exclusive Distributor:

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,
Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,
Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by:

In-house

Preface

The operating theatre is one of the most critical environments in the healthcare system, where precision, expertise, and teamwork come together to save lives and improve patient outcomes. Behind every successful surgery lies not only the skill of the surgeon but also the seamless coordination of all the professionals and resources within the operation theatre. *Essentials of Operation Theatre* is written to provide an in-depth guide to the principles, practices, and protocols that ensure the smooth functioning of this vital space.

This book serves as a comprehensive resource for anyone involved in the operation theatre environment—whether they are surgeons, anesthesiologists, nurses, technicians, or students. It brings together key aspects of operation theatre management, focusing on the technical, logistical, and safety measures that are essential for maintaining a high standard of care.

From understanding the layout and design of the operating room to the roles of different healthcare professionals, *Essentials of Operation Theatre* emphasizes the importance of hygiene, sterilization, equipment handling, patient safety, and effective communication. It also provides a clear understanding of the surgical workflow, from patient preparation to post-operative care, highlighting the importance of efficiency and attention to detail in ensuring positive outcomes.

The book is divided into easy-to-follow sections, starting with the fundamental principles of operation theatre management, including the anatomy of the operating room, infection control practices, and the preparation of the surgical team and instruments. It then delves into specific surgical procedures, offering guidelines for various types of surgeries, including general, orthopedic, cardiac, and specialized fields. Each

chapter includes practical tips, case studies, and real-world examples to illustrate the best practices and challenges faced in the operating room.

In writing this book, the goal is not only to educate and inform but also to highlight the collaborative nature of the operation theatre environment. It is a place where the safety and well-being of the patient are paramount, and where every team member—whether in the front or behind the scenes—plays a critical role in ensuring success.

As you read through *Essentials of Operation Theatre*, I hope you will gain a deep appreciation for the intricacies of this high-stakes environment. The knowledge and insights shared in this book are intended to provide a solid foundation for those looking to enter this field, as well as a valuable reference for experienced professionals seeking to refine their skills and improve the quality of care in their operating theatres.

This book is a tribute to the dedication, precision, and teamwork that define the essence of surgery and the operation theatre, and I hope it inspires everyone involved to continuously strive for excellence in the pursuit of better patient care.

—Editor

Contents

Preface	v
1. Bacteria	1
<i>Mr. Bhavesh Bhatia</i>	
2. Catheter-Associated Urinary Tract Infection	11
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
3. Diagnostic Test	19
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
4. Emergency/Casualty Department	29
<i>Ms. Shakha Patel</i>	
5. Hospital Infection Prevention and Control	33
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
6. ICU	47
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
7. Isolation Precautions	50
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
8. Micro-Organisms	61
<i>Mr. Chetak Patel</i>	
9. Microbial Growth	68
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
10. Microbial Nutrition and Growth	79
<i>Mr. Bhavesh Bhatia</i>	
11. NICU	88
<i>Ms. Pooja Patel</i>	
12. OT	92
<i>Ms. Shakha Patel</i>	

13. Oxygen Administration	96
<i>Mr. Bhavesh Bhatia</i>	
14. Parasites and Fectors	104
<i>Mr. Chetak Patel</i>	
15. Pathogenic Fungus	121
<i>Renu Susan Varghese</i>	
16. PICU	127
<i>Ms. Shakha Patel</i>	
17. Pressure Ulcer	131
<i>Mr. Chetak Patel</i>	
18. Sterilization and Disinfection	145
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
19. VIRUS	164
<i>Renu Susan Varghese</i>	

1. Purpose and Function**a. Purpose**

- **Surgical Procedures:** The primary function of the operation theatre is to provide a sterile environment for performing surgical procedures. This includes both elective (planned) surgeries and emergency operations.

b. Function

- **Safe Environment:** Ensures a controlled and sterile environment to minimize the risk of infection and provide optimal conditions for surgery.
- **Advanced Technology:** Houses specialized equipment and tools required for various types of surgeries.

2. Components and Equipment**a. Sterile Environment**

- **Surgical Instruments:** A range of sterile surgical instruments and supplies, including scalpels, forceps, and sutures, are used during procedures.
- **Sterilization:** Instruments are sterilized using autoclaves and other methods to prevent contamination.

b. Operating Table

- **Adjustable:** An adjustable table that allows positioning of the patient for optimal access to the surgical site.

c. Lighting

- **Surgical Lights:** High-intensity, adjustable lights provide illumination to the surgical site without casting shadows.

1. Nursing Tutor, Aarohant Institute of Nursing

ESSENTIALS OF OPERATION THEATRE

ESSENTIALS OF OPERATION THEATRE

Editor

Prof. Sejal Patel

**MARK PUBLISHERS
JAIPUR**

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Essentials of Operation Theatre

Editor : Prof. Sejal Patel

Edition : 2020

ISBN : 978-81-89472-34-4

Published by:

Mark Publishers

Jaipur

Exclusive Distributor:

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,
Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,
Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by:

In-house

Preface

The operating theatre is one of the most critical environments in the healthcare system, where precision, expertise, and teamwork come together to save lives and improve patient outcomes. Behind every successful surgery lies not only the skill of the surgeon but also the seamless coordination of all the professionals and resources within the operation theatre. *Essentials of Operation Theatre* is written to provide an in-depth guide to the principles, practices, and protocols that ensure the smooth functioning of this vital space.

This book serves as a comprehensive resource for anyone involved in the operation theatre environment—whether they are surgeons, anesthesiologists, nurses, technicians, or students. It brings together key aspects of operation theatre management, focusing on the technical, logistical, and safety measures that are essential for maintaining a high standard of care.

From understanding the layout and design of the operating room to the roles of different healthcare professionals, *Essentials of Operation Theatre* emphasizes the importance of hygiene, sterilization, equipment handling, patient safety, and effective communication. It also provides a clear understanding of the surgical workflow, from patient preparation to post-operative care, highlighting the importance of efficiency and attention to detail in ensuring positive outcomes.

The book is divided into easy-to-follow sections, starting with the fundamental principles of operation theatre management, including the anatomy of the operating room, infection control practices, and the preparation of the surgical team and instruments. It then delves into specific surgical procedures, offering guidelines for various types of surgeries, including general, orthopedic, cardiac, and specialized fields. Each

chapter includes practical tips, case studies, and real-world examples to illustrate the best practices and challenges faced in the operating room.

In writing this book, the goal is not only to educate and inform but also to highlight the collaborative nature of the operation theatre environment. It is a place where the safety and well-being of the patient are paramount, and where every team member—whether in the front or behind the scenes—plays a critical role in ensuring success.

As you read through *Essentials of Operation Theatre*, I hope you will gain a deep appreciation for the intricacies of this high-stakes environment. The knowledge and insights shared in this book are intended to provide a solid foundation for those looking to enter this field, as well as a valuable reference for experienced professionals seeking to refine their skills and improve the quality of care in their operating theatres.

This book is a tribute to the dedication, precision, and teamwork that define the essence of surgery and the operation theatre, and I hope it inspires everyone involved to continuously strive for excellence in the pursuit of better patient care.

—Editor

Contents

Preface	v
1. Bacteria	1
<i>Mr. Bhavesh Bhatia</i>	
2. Catheter-Associated Urinary Tract Infection	11
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
3. Diagnostic Test	19
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
4. Emergency/Casualty Department	29
<i>Ms. Shakha Patel</i>	
5. Hospital Infection Prevention and Control	33
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
6. ICU	47
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
7. Isolation Precautions	50
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
8. Micro-Organisms	61
<i>Mr. Chetak Patel</i>	
9. Microbial Growth	68
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
10. Microbial Nutrition and Growth	79
<i>Mr. Bhavesh Bhatia</i>	
11. NICU	88
<i>Ms. Pooja Patel</i>	
12. OT	92
<i>Ms. Shakha Patel</i>	

13. Oxygen Administration	96
<i>Mr. Bhavesh Bhatia</i>	
14. Parasites and Fectors	104
<i>Mr. Chetak Patel</i>	
15. Pathogenic Fungus	121
<i>Renu Susan Varghese</i>	
16. PICU	127
<i>Ms. Shakha Patel</i>	
17. Pressure Ulcer	131
<i>Mr. Chetak Patel</i>	
18. Sterilization and Disinfection	145
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
19. VIRUS	164
<i>Renu Susan Varghese</i>	

13

Oxygen Administration

Mr. Bhavesh Bhatia¹

Oxygen administration may be initiated for a variety of reasons. Increased metabolic demand, maintenance of oxygenation while providing anesthesia, supplementation during treatment of lung illnesses that affect oxygen exchange, treatment of headaches, and carbon monoxide exposure are a few examples of its initiation. Oxygen is necessary for basic metabolic demands in the body, and it is an important part of resuscitation in many acute illnesses, as well as the maintenance of chronic hypoxemic diseases. This activity will highlight the mechanism of action, adverse event profile, and other key factors pertinent to members of the interprofessional team in the management of patients with hypoxemia and related conditions. This activity discusses the interprofessional evaluation and treatment of patients needing oxygen therapy.

Objectives

1. Identify the routes of administration, indications for and complications of oxygen administration, as well as potential side effects and situations in which oxygen administration is contraindicated.
2. Outline patient populations that benefit from oxygen administration.
3. Review the considerations of oxygen administration.

1. Nursing Tutor, AION

ESSENTIALS OF OPERATION THEATRE

ESSENTIALS OF OPERATION THEATRE

Editor

Prof. Sejal Patel

MARK PUBLISHERS
JAIPUR

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Essentials of Operation Theatre

Editor : Prof. Sejal Patel

Edition : 2020

ISBN : 978-81-89472-34-4

Published by:

Mark Publishers

Jaipur

Exclusive Distributor:

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,
Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,
Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by:

In-house

Preface

The operating theatre is one of the most critical environments in the healthcare system, where precision, expertise, and teamwork come together to save lives and improve patient outcomes. Behind every successful surgery lies not only the skill of the surgeon but also the seamless coordination of all the professionals and resources within the operation theatre. *Essentials of Operation Theatre* is written to provide an in-depth guide to the principles, practices, and protocols that ensure the smooth functioning of this vital space.

This book serves as a comprehensive resource for anyone involved in the operation theatre environment—whether they are surgeons, anesthesiologists, nurses, technicians, or students. It brings together key aspects of operation theatre management, focusing on the technical, logistical, and safety measures that are essential for maintaining a high standard of care.

From understanding the layout and design of the operating room to the roles of different healthcare professionals, *Essentials of Operation Theatre* emphasizes the importance of hygiene, sterilization, equipment handling, patient safety, and effective communication. It also provides a clear understanding of the surgical workflow, from patient preparation to post-operative care, highlighting the importance of efficiency and attention to detail in ensuring positive outcomes.

The book is divided into easy-to-follow sections, starting with the fundamental principles of operation theatre management, including the anatomy of the operating room, infection control practices, and the preparation of the surgical team and instruments. It then delves into specific surgical procedures, offering guidelines for various types of surgeries, including general, orthopedic, cardiac, and specialized fields. Each

chapter includes practical tips, case studies, and real-world examples to illustrate the best practices and challenges faced in the operating room.

In writing this book, the goal is not only to educate and inform but also to highlight the collaborative nature of the operation theatre environment. It is a place where the safety and well-being of the patient are paramount, and where every team member—whether in the front or behind the scenes—plays a critical role in ensuring success.

As you read through *Essentials of Operation Theatre*, I hope you will gain a deep appreciation for the intricacies of this high-stakes environment. The knowledge and insights shared in this book are intended to provide a solid foundation for those looking to enter this field, as well as a valuable reference for experienced professionals seeking to refine their skills and improve the quality of care in their operating theatres.

This book is a tribute to the dedication, precision, and teamwork that define the essence of surgery and the operation theatre, and I hope it inspires everyone involved to continuously strive for excellence in the pursuit of better patient care.

—Editor

Contents

Preface	v
1. Bacteria	1
<i>Mr. Bhavesh Bhatia</i>	
2. Catheter-Associated Urinary Tract Infection	11
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
3. Diagnostic Test	19
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
4. Emergency/Casualty Department	29
<i>Ms. Shakha Patel</i>	
5. Hospital Infection Prevention and Control	33
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
6. ICU	47
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
7. Isolation Precautions	50
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
8. Micro-Organisms	61
<i>Mr. Chetak Patel</i>	
9. Microbial Growth	68
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
10. Microbial Nutrition and Growth	79
<i>Mr. Bhavesh Bhatia</i>	
11. NICU	88
<i>Ms. Pooja Patel</i>	
12. OT	92
<i>Ms. Shakha Patel</i>	

13. Oxygen Administration	96
<i>Mr. Bhavesh Bhatia</i>	
14. Parasites and Fectors	104
<i>Mr. Chetak Patel</i>	
15. Pathogenic Fungus	121
<i>Renu Susan Varghese</i>	
16. PICU	127
<i>Ms. Shakha Patel</i>	
17. Pressure Ulcer	131
<i>Mr. Chetak Patel</i>	
18. Sterilization and Disinfection	145
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
19. VIRUS	164
<i>Renu Susan Varghese</i>	

14

Parasites and Vectors

Mr. Chetak Patel¹

INTRODUCTION

By now, through the study of Units 1, 2 and 3, you all know what we mean by parasites and vectors. The parasites are merely inhabitants of our planet which have adapted themselves to a type of existence in which they derive nourishment from other living beings (hosts). Sometimes these parasites cause discomfort or injury to the host; at other times they may cause disease in host and often may also be responsible for the death of the host. When the host dies, the internal parasites also die along with the host. All parasites are highly specialised for the type of existence they lead. In this unit, you will become familiar with some of the important well known protozoan and helminth parasites pathogenic to humans. You will also learn the various diseases caused by these parasites and how these diseases are diagnosed and transmitted by the vectors. Methods to control these parasites and vectors are also stated at appropriate places in the text.

Definition of Terms

- **Parasite:** An organism which derives its nourishment at the cost of another organism (host) in or on which it lives is called a parasite.
- **Host:** The organism which harbours the parasite is called a host.
- **Parasitism:** The relation which exists between the parasite and the host is known as parasitism. Parasitism may also be

1. Nursing Tutor, AION

ESSENTIALS OF OPERATION THEATRE

ESSENTIALS OF OPERATION THEATRE

Editor

Prof. Sejal Patel

MARK PUBLISHERS
JAIPUR

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Essentials of Operation Theatre

Editor : Prof. Sejal Patel

Edition : 2020

ISBN : 978-81-89472-34-4

Published by:

Mark Publishers

Jaipur

Exclusive Distributor:

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,
Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,
Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by:

In-house

Preface

The operating theatre is one of the most critical environments in the healthcare system, where precision, expertise, and teamwork come together to save lives and improve patient outcomes. Behind every successful surgery lies not only the skill of the surgeon but also the seamless coordination of all the professionals and resources within the operation theatre. *Essentials of Operation Theatre* is written to provide an in-depth guide to the principles, practices, and protocols that ensure the smooth functioning of this vital space.

This book serves as a comprehensive resource for anyone involved in the operation theatre environment—whether they are surgeons, anesthesiologists, nurses, technicians, or students. It brings together key aspects of operation theatre management, focusing on the technical, logistical, and safety measures that are essential for maintaining a high standard of care.

From understanding the layout and design of the operating room to the roles of different healthcare professionals, *Essentials of Operation Theatre* emphasizes the importance of hygiene, sterilization, equipment handling, patient safety, and effective communication. It also provides a clear understanding of the surgical workflow, from patient preparation to post-operative care, highlighting the importance of efficiency and attention to detail in ensuring positive outcomes.

The book is divided into easy-to-follow sections, starting with the fundamental principles of operation theatre management, including the anatomy of the operating room, infection control practices, and the preparation of the surgical team and instruments. It then delves into specific surgical procedures, offering guidelines for various types of surgeries, including general, orthopedic, cardiac, and specialized fields. Each

chapter includes practical tips, case studies, and real-world examples to illustrate the best practices and challenges faced in the operating room.

In writing this book, the goal is not only to educate and inform but also to highlight the collaborative nature of the operation theatre environment. It is a place where the safety and well-being of the patient are paramount, and where every team member—whether in the front or behind the scenes—plays a critical role in ensuring success.

As you read through *Essentials of Operation Theatre*, I hope you will gain a deep appreciation for the intricacies of this high-stakes environment. The knowledge and insights shared in this book are intended to provide a solid foundation for those looking to enter this field, as well as a valuable reference for experienced professionals seeking to refine their skills and improve the quality of care in their operating theatres.

This book is a tribute to the dedication, precision, and teamwork that define the essence of surgery and the operation theatre, and I hope it inspires everyone involved to continuously strive for excellence in the pursuit of better patient care.

—Editor

Contents

Preface	v
1. Bacteria	1
<i>Mr. Bhavesh Bhatia</i>	
2. Catheter-Associated Urinary Tract Infection	11
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
3. Diagnostic Test	19
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
4. Emergency/Casualty Department	29
<i>Ms. Shakha Patel</i>	
5. Hospital Infection Prevention and Control	33
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
6. ICU	47
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
7. Isolation Precautions	50
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
8. Micro-Organisms	61
<i>Mr. Chetak Patel</i>	
9. Microbial Growth	68
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
10. Microbial Nutrition and Growth	79
<i>Mr. Bhavesh Bhatia</i>	
11. NICU	88
<i>Ms. Pooja Patel</i>	
12. OT	92
<i>Ms. Shakha Patel</i>	

13. Oxygen Administration	96
<i>Mr. Bhavesh Bhatia</i>	
14. Parasites and Fectors	104
<i>Mr. Chetak Patel</i>	
15. Pathogenic Fungus	121
<i>Renu Susan Varghese</i>	
16. PICU	127
<i>Ms. Shakha Patel</i>	
17. Pressure Ulcer	131
<i>Mr. Chetak Patel</i>	
18. Sterilization and Disinfection	145
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
19. VIRUS	164
<i>Renu Susan Varghese</i>	

What is Immunity?

Immunity is the ability of the body to defend itself against disease-causing organisms. Everyday our body comes in contact with several pathogens, but only a few results into diseases. The reason is, our body has the ability to release antibodies against these pathogens and protects the body against diseases. This defence mechanism is called immunity.

Table Of Contents

- Types Of Immunity
- Innate Immunity
- Acquired Immunity
- Autoimmunity
- Vaccines
- Immune System

Types of Immunity

There are two major types of immunity:

1. Innate Immunity or Natural or Non-specific Immunity.
2. Acquired Immunity or Adaptive Immunity.

Innate Immunity

- This type of immunity is present in an organism by birth.

-
1. Nursing Tutor, AION

ESSENTIALS OF OPERATION THEATRE

ESSENTIALS OF OPERATION THEATRE

Editor

Prof. Sejal Patel

MARK PUBLISHERS
JAIPUR

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Essentials of Operation Theatre

Editor : Prof. Sejal Patel

Edition : 2020

ISBN : 978-81-89472-34-4

Published by:

Mark Publishers

Jaipur

Exclusive Distributor:

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,
Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,
Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by:

In-house

Preface

The operating theatre is one of the most critical environments in the healthcare system, where precision, expertise, and teamwork come together to save lives and improve patient outcomes. Behind every successful surgery lies not only the skill of the surgeon but also the seamless coordination of all the professionals and resources within the operation theatre. *Essentials of Operation Theatre* is written to provide an in-depth guide to the principles, practices, and protocols that ensure the smooth functioning of this vital space.

This book serves as a comprehensive resource for anyone involved in the operation theatre environment—whether they are surgeons, anesthesiologists, nurses, technicians, or students. It brings together key aspects of operation theatre management, focusing on the technical, logistical, and safety measures that are essential for maintaining a high standard of care.

From understanding the layout and design of the operating room to the roles of different healthcare professionals, *Essentials of Operation Theatre* emphasizes the importance of hygiene, sterilization, equipment handling, patient safety, and effective communication. It also provides a clear understanding of the surgical workflow, from patient preparation to post-operative care, highlighting the importance of efficiency and attention to detail in ensuring positive outcomes.

The book is divided into easy-to-follow sections, starting with the fundamental principles of operation theatre management, including the anatomy of the operating room, infection control practices, and the preparation of the surgical team and instruments. It then delves into specific surgical procedures, offering guidelines for various types of surgeries, including general, orthopedic, cardiac, and specialized fields. Each

chapter includes practical tips, case studies, and real-world examples to illustrate the best practices and challenges faced in the operating room.

In writing this book, the goal is not only to educate and inform but also to highlight the collaborative nature of the operation theatre environment. It is a place where the safety and well-being of the patient are paramount, and where every team member—whether in the front or behind the scenes—plays a critical role in ensuring success.

As you read through *Essentials of Operation Theatre*, I hope you will gain a deep appreciation for the intricacies of this high-stakes environment. The knowledge and insights shared in this book are intended to provide a solid foundation for those looking to enter this field, as well as a valuable reference for experienced professionals seeking to refine their skills and improve the quality of care in their operating theatres.

This book is a tribute to the dedication, precision, and teamwork that define the essence of surgery and the operation theatre, and I hope it inspires everyone involved to continuously strive for excellence in the pursuit of better patient care.

—Editor

Contents

Preface	v
1. Bacteria	1
<i>Mr. Bhavesh Bhatia</i>	
2. Catheter-Associated Urinary Tract Infection	11
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
3. Diagnostic Test	19
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
4. Emergency/Casualty Department	29
<i>Ms. Shakha Patel</i>	
5. Hospital Infection Prevention and Control	33
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
6. ICU	47
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
7. Isolation Precautions	50
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
8. Micro-Organisms	61
<i>Mr. Chetak Patel</i>	
9. Microbial Growth	68
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
10. Microbial Nutrition and Growth	79
<i>Mr. Bhavesh Bhatia</i>	
11. NICU	88
<i>Ms. Pooja Patel</i>	
12. OT	92
<i>Ms. Shakha Patel</i>	

13. Oxygen Administration	96
<i>Mr. Bhavesh Bhatia</i>	
14. Parasites and Fectors	104
<i>Mr. Chetak Patel</i>	
15. Pathogenic Fungus	121
<i>Renu Susan Varghese</i>	
16. PICU	127
<i>Ms. Shakha Patel</i>	
17. Pressure Ulcer	131
<i>Mr. Chetak Patel</i>	
18. Sterilization and Disinfection	145
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
19. VIRUS	164
<i>Renu Susan Varghese</i>	

Ms. Shakha Patel¹

The **Pediatric Intensive Care Unit (PICU)** is a specialized unit within a hospital designed to provide intensive care and monitoring for critically ill or injured children. Here's an in-depth look at the PICU, including its purpose, structure, staffing, and key considerations:

1. Purpose and Function

a. Purpose

- **Critical Care for Children:** The PICU provides advanced medical care for children with severe or life-threatening conditions, including those with complex medical, surgical, or traumatic needs.
- **Specialized Treatment:** It is designed to manage conditions that require continuous monitoring, advanced interventions, and specialized care.

b. Function

- **Continuous Monitoring:** Offers 24/7 monitoring of vital signs and clinical status to manage acute medical issues.
- **Advanced Interventions:** Provides intensive treatments and interventions tailored to pediatric patients.

2. Structure and Facilities

a. Bedside Monitoring

- **Advanced Technology:** Each patient is monitored using state-of-the-art equipment to track heart rate, blood pressure, oxygen saturation, and other critical parameters.

b. Resuscitation and Emergency Care

1. Nursing Tutor, Aarohant Institute of Nursing

ESSENTIALS OF OPERATION THEATRE

ESSENTIALS OF OPERATION THEATRE

Editor

Prof. Sejal Patel

MARK PUBLISHERS
JAIPUR

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Essentials of Operation Theatre

Editor : Prof. Sejal Patel

Edition : 2020

ISBN : 978-81-89472-34-4

Published by:

Mark Publishers

Jaipur

Exclusive Distributor:

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,
Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,
Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by:

In-house

Preface

The operating theatre is one of the most critical environments in the healthcare system, where precision, expertise, and teamwork come together to save lives and improve patient outcomes. Behind every successful surgery lies not only the skill of the surgeon but also the seamless coordination of all the professionals and resources within the operation theatre. *Essentials of Operation Theatre* is written to provide an in-depth guide to the principles, practices, and protocols that ensure the smooth functioning of this vital space.

This book serves as a comprehensive resource for anyone involved in the operation theatre environment—whether they are surgeons, anesthesiologists, nurses, technicians, or students. It brings together key aspects of operation theatre management, focusing on the technical, logistical, and safety measures that are essential for maintaining a high standard of care.

From understanding the layout and design of the operating room to the roles of different healthcare professionals, *Essentials of Operation Theatre* emphasizes the importance of hygiene, sterilization, equipment handling, patient safety, and effective communication. It also provides a clear understanding of the surgical workflow, from patient preparation to post-operative care, highlighting the importance of efficiency and attention to detail in ensuring positive outcomes.

The book is divided into easy-to-follow sections, starting with the fundamental principles of operation theatre management, including the anatomy of the operating room, infection control practices, and the preparation of the surgical team and instruments. It then delves into specific surgical procedures, offering guidelines for various types of surgeries, including general, orthopedic, cardiac, and specialized fields. Each

chapter includes practical tips, case studies, and real-world examples to illustrate the best practices and challenges faced in the operating room.

In writing this book, the goal is not only to educate and inform but also to highlight the collaborative nature of the operation theatre environment. It is a place where the safety and well-being of the patient are paramount, and where every team member—whether in the front or behind the scenes—plays a critical role in ensuring success.

As you read through *Essentials of Operation Theatre*, I hope you will gain a deep appreciation for the intricacies of this high-stakes environment. The knowledge and insights shared in this book are intended to provide a solid foundation for those looking to enter this field, as well as a valuable reference for experienced professionals seeking to refine their skills and improve the quality of care in their operating theatres.

This book is a tribute to the dedication, precision, and teamwork that define the essence of surgery and the operation theatre, and I hope it inspires everyone involved to continuously strive for excellence in the pursuit of better patient care.

—Editor

Contents

Preface	v
1. Bacteria	1
<i>Mr. Bhavesh Bhatia</i>	
2. Catheter-Associated Urinary Tract Infection	11
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
3. Diagnostic Test	19
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
4. Emergency/Casualty Department	29
<i>Ms. Shakha Patel</i>	
5. Hospital Infection Prevention and Control	33
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
6. ICU	47
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
7. Isolation Precautions	50
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
8. Micro-Organisms	61
<i>Mr. Chetak Patel</i>	
9. Microbial Growth	68
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
10. Microbial Nutrition and Growth	79
<i>Mr. Bhavesh Bhatia</i>	
11. NICU	88
<i>Ms. Pooja Patel</i>	
12. OT	92
<i>Ms. Shakha Patel</i>	

13. Oxygen Administration	96
<i>Mr. Bhavesh Bhatia</i>	
14. Parasites and Fectors	104
<i>Mr. Chetak Patel</i>	
15. Pathogenic Fungus	121
<i>Renu Susan Varghese</i>	
16. PICU	127
<i>Ms. Shakha Patel</i>	
17. Pressure Ulcer	131
<i>Mr. Chetak Patel</i>	
18. Sterilization and Disinfection	145
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
19. VIRUS	164
<i>Renu Susan Varghese</i>	

Pressure Ulcers

- Epidemiology
- Definition and Location
- Classification
- Pathogenesis and Risk Factors
- Prevention
- Treatment
- Pressure Ulcers treatment for each stage
- Complications

Pressure Ulcers Epidemiology

- 1-3 million Americans are affected
- Health care expenditures: \$ 5 billion/year
- More than 17,000 lawsuits related to pressure Ulcers are filed annually
- 1 in 4 persons in the USA who died in 1987 had a dermal ulcer
- Pressure Ulcers develop primarily in elderly patients
- Setting
 - Hospital 60%
 - Nursing homes 18%
 - Home 18%
- 1/3 of patients undergoing surgery for hip fracture develop a pressure ulcer

1. Nursing Tutor, AION

ESSENTIALS OF OPERATION THEATRE

ESSENTIALS OF OPERATION THEATRE

Editor

Prof. Sejal Patel

MARK PUBLISHERS
JAIPUR

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Essentials of Operation Theatre

Editor : Prof. Sejal Patel

Edition : 2020

ISBN : 978-81-89472-34-4

Published by:

Mark Publishers

Jaipur

Exclusive Distributor:

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,
Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,
Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by:

In-house

Preface

The operating theatre is one of the most critical environments in the healthcare system, where precision, expertise, and teamwork come together to save lives and improve patient outcomes. Behind every successful surgery lies not only the skill of the surgeon but also the seamless coordination of all the professionals and resources within the operation theatre. *Essentials of Operation Theatre* is written to provide an in-depth guide to the principles, practices, and protocols that ensure the smooth functioning of this vital space.

This book serves as a comprehensive resource for anyone involved in the operation theatre environment—whether they are surgeons, anesthesiologists, nurses, technicians, or students. It brings together key aspects of operation theatre management, focusing on the technical, logistical, and safety measures that are essential for maintaining a high standard of care.

From understanding the layout and design of the operating room to the roles of different healthcare professionals, *Essentials of Operation Theatre* emphasizes the importance of hygiene, sterilization, equipment handling, patient safety, and effective communication. It also provides a clear understanding of the surgical workflow, from patient preparation to post-operative care, highlighting the importance of efficiency and attention to detail in ensuring positive outcomes.

The book is divided into easy-to-follow sections, starting with the fundamental principles of operation theatre management, including the anatomy of the operating room, infection control practices, and the preparation of the surgical team and instruments. It then delves into specific surgical procedures, offering guidelines for various types of surgeries, including general, orthopedic, cardiac, and specialized fields. Each

chapter includes practical tips, case studies, and real-world examples to illustrate the best practices and challenges faced in the operating room.

In writing this book, the goal is not only to educate and inform but also to highlight the collaborative nature of the operation theatre environment. It is a place where the safety and well-being of the patient are paramount, and where every team member—whether in the front or behind the scenes—plays a critical role in ensuring success.

As you read through *Essentials of Operation Theatre*, I hope you will gain a deep appreciation for the intricacies of this high-stakes environment. The knowledge and insights shared in this book are intended to provide a solid foundation for those looking to enter this field, as well as a valuable reference for experienced professionals seeking to refine their skills and improve the quality of care in their operating theatres.

This book is a tribute to the dedication, precision, and teamwork that define the essence of surgery and the operation theatre, and I hope it inspires everyone involved to continuously strive for excellence in the pursuit of better patient care.

—Editor

Contents

Preface	v
1. Bacteria	1
<i>Mr. Bhavesh Bhatia</i>	
2. Catheter-Associated Urinary Tract Infection	11
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
3. Diagnostic Test	19
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
4. Emergency/Casualty Department	29
<i>Ms. Shakha Patel</i>	
5. Hospital Infection Prevention and Control	33
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
6. ICU	47
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
7. Isolation Precautions	50
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
8. Micro-Organisms	61
<i>Mr. Chetak Patel</i>	
9. Microbial Growth	68
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
10. Microbial Nutrition and Growth	79
<i>Mr. Bhavesh Bhatia</i>	
11. NICU	88
<i>Ms. Pooja Patel</i>	
12. OT	92
<i>Ms. Shakha Patel</i>	

13. Oxygen Administration	96
<i>Mr. Bhavesh Bhatia</i>	
14. Parasites and Fectors	104
<i>Mr. Chetak Patel</i>	
15. Pathogenic Fungus	121
<i>Renu Susan Varghese</i>	
16. PICU	127
<i>Ms. Shakha Patel</i>	
17. Pressure Ulcer	131
<i>Mr. Chetak Patel</i>	
18. Sterilization and Disinfection	145
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
19. VIRUS	164
<i>Renu Susan Varghese</i>	

Sterilization and disinfection are the basic components of hospital infection control activities. Every day, a number of hospitals are performing various surgical procedures. Even more number of invasive procedures are being performed in different health care facilities. The medical device or the surgical instrument that comes in contact with the sterile tissue or the mucus membrane of the patient during the various processes is associated with increased risk of introduction of pathogens into the patient's body.

Keywords: Bundle approach, Disinfection techniques, Health care-associated infections, Medical equipment, Sterilization techniques

Background

Sterilization and disinfection are the basic components of hospital infection control activities. Every day, a number of hospitals are performing various surgical procedures. Even more number of invasive procedures are being performed in different health care facilities. The medical device or the surgical instrument that comes in contact with the sterile tissue or the mucus membrane of the patient during the various processes is associated with increased risk of introduction of pathogens into the patient's body. Moreover, there is chance of transmission of infection from patient to patient; from patient

1. Nursing Tutor, AION

ESSENTIALS OF OPERATION THEATRE

ESSENTIALS OF OPERATION THEATRE

Editor

Prof. Sejal Patel

**MARK PUBLISHERS
JAIPUR**

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Essentials of Operation Theatre

Editor : Prof. Sejal Patel

Edition : 2020

ISBN : 978-81-89472-34-4

Published by:

Mark Publishers

Jaipur

Exclusive Distributor:

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,
Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,
Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by:

In-house

Preface

The operating theatre is one of the most critical environments in the healthcare system, where precision, expertise, and teamwork come together to save lives and improve patient outcomes. Behind every successful surgery lies not only the skill of the surgeon but also the seamless coordination of all the professionals and resources within the operation theatre. *Essentials of Operation Theatre* is written to provide an in-depth guide to the principles, practices, and protocols that ensure the smooth functioning of this vital space.

This book serves as a comprehensive resource for anyone involved in the operation theatre environment—whether they are surgeons, anesthesiologists, nurses, technicians, or students. It brings together key aspects of operation theatre management, focusing on the technical, logistical, and safety measures that are essential for maintaining a high standard of care.

From understanding the layout and design of the operating room to the roles of different healthcare professionals, *Essentials of Operation Theatre* emphasizes the importance of hygiene, sterilization, equipment handling, patient safety, and effective communication. It also provides a clear understanding of the surgical workflow, from patient preparation to post-operative care, highlighting the importance of efficiency and attention to detail in ensuring positive outcomes.

The book is divided into easy-to-follow sections, starting with the fundamental principles of operation theatre management, including the anatomy of the operating room, infection control practices, and the preparation of the surgical team and instruments. It then delves into specific surgical procedures, offering guidelines for various types of surgeries, including general, orthopedic, cardiac, and specialized fields. Each

chapter includes practical tips, case studies, and real-world examples to illustrate the best practices and challenges faced in the operating room.

In writing this book, the goal is not only to educate and inform but also to highlight the collaborative nature of the operation theatre environment. It is a place where the safety and well-being of the patient are paramount, and where every team member—whether in the front or behind the scenes—plays a critical role in ensuring success.

As you read through *Essentials of Operation Theatre*, I hope you will gain a deep appreciation for the intricacies of this high-stakes environment. The knowledge and insights shared in this book are intended to provide a solid foundation for those looking to enter this field, as well as a valuable reference for experienced professionals seeking to refine their skills and improve the quality of care in their operating theatres.

This book is a tribute to the dedication, precision, and teamwork that define the essence of surgery and the operation theatre, and I hope it inspires everyone involved to continuously strive for excellence in the pursuit of better patient care.

—Editor

Contents

Preface	v
1. Bacteria	1
<i>Mr. Bhavesh Bhatia</i>	
2. Catheter-Associated Urinary Tract Infection	11
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
3. Diagnostic Test	19
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
4. Emergency/Casualty Department	29
<i>Ms. Shakha Patel</i>	
5. Hospital Infection Prevention and Control	33
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
6. ICU	47
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
7. Isolation Precautions	50
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
8. Micro-Organisms	61
<i>Mr. Chetak Patel</i>	
9. Microbial Growth	68
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
10. Microbial Nutrition and Growth	79
<i>Mr. Bhavesh Bhatia</i>	
11. NICU	88
<i>Ms. Pooja Patel</i>	
12. OT	92
<i>Ms. Shakha Patel</i>	

13. Oxygen Administration	96
<i>Mr. Bhavesh Bhatia</i>	
14. Parasites and Fectors	104
<i>Mr. Chetak Patel</i>	
15. Pathogenic Fungus	121
<i>Renu Susan Varghese</i>	
16. PICU	127
<i>Ms. Shakha Patel</i>	
17. Pressure Ulcer	131
<i>Mr. Chetak Patel</i>	
18. Sterilization and Disinfection	145
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
19. VIRUS	164
<i>Renu Susan Varghese</i>	

Definition

A virus is an infectious microbe consisting of a segment of nucleic acid (either DNA or RNA) surrounded by a protein coat. A virus cannot replicate alone; instead, it must infect cells and use components of the host cell to make copies of itself. Often, a virus ends up killing the host cell in the process, causing damage to the host organism. Well-known examples of viruses causing human disease include AIDS, COVID-19, measles and smallpox.

What is a virus?

Viruses are small germs (pathogens) that can infect you and make you sick. They can infect humans, plants, animals, bacteria and fungi. Each one infects only specific types of hosts.

Viral infections in humans can cause no symptoms or make you extremely ill. Types of diseases they can cause include:

- Respiratory illnesses.
- Diarrhea and vomiting.
- Sexually transmitted infections (STIs).
- Skin conditions.

A virus is a small piece of genetic information in a “carrying case” — a protective coating called a capsid. Viruses aren’t made up of cells, so they don’t have all the equipment that cells do to make more copies of themselves. Instead, they carry

1. Nursing Tutor, AION

A Comprehensive Guide to Medical and Surgical Conditions

A Comprehensive Guide to Medical and Surgical Conditions

Editor

Dr. Amit Vyas

MARK PUBLISHERS
JAIPUR

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : A Comprehensive Guide to Medical and Surgical Conditions

Author : Dr. Amit Vyas

Edition : 2021

ISBN : 978-81-89472-35-1

Published by :

Mark Publishers

Jaipur-302 021

Exclusive Distributor

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,

Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,

Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by :

In-house

Preface

Overview

This comprehensive guide offers a detailed exploration of a wide range of common medical conditions, from acute illnesses to chronic diseases. It is designed to provide healthcare professionals, students, and patients with a thorough understanding of the pathophysiology, clinical manifestations, diagnosis, and management of these conditions.

Key Topics

- **Vascular Disorders:**
 - Thrombophlebitis: Inflammation of a vein with a blood clot
- **Skin Disorders:**
 - Scabies: A contagious skin infestation
- **Bone Disorders:**
 - Paget's Disease: A chronic bone disorder
- **Cancer:**
 - Malignant neoplasms and their treatment
- **Immune Disorders:**
 - Autoimmune diseases: Conditions where the immune system attacks the body's own tissues
 - Hypersensitivity reactions: Allergic and other immune responses
- **Gastrointestinal Disorders:**
 - Hernia: A protrusion of an organ or tissue through a weak spot in the muscle or connective tissue
 - Hemorrhoids: Swollen veins in the rectum and anus
- **General Medical Conditions:**

- Edema: Swelling caused by fluid buildup
- Wound Healing: The process of tissue repair
- **Neurological Disorders:**
 - Cerebral Palsy: A group of disorders that affect movement and muscle tone
- **Hematological Disorders:**
 - Sickle Cell Anemia: A genetic blood disorder
 - Rickets: A bone disorder caused by vitamin D deficiency
- **Emergency Medicine:**
 - Cerebrovascular Accident (Stroke): Disruption of blood supply to the brain
- **Liver Diseases:**
 - Liver Cirrhosis: Scarring of the liver
- **Cardiovascular Diseases:**
 - Cardiomyopathy: Diseases of the heart muscle
- **Gastrointestinal Diseases:**
 - Crohn's Disease: A chronic inflammatory bowel disease
- **Respiratory Diseases:**
 - Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease (COPD): A lung disease that obstructs airflow
- **Metabolic Disorders:**
 - Diabetes Mellitus: A metabolic disorder characterized by high blood sugar levels
- **Target Audience**
 - Medical and nursing students
 - Healthcare professionals
 - Patients and their families
- **Unique Selling Points**
 - **Comprehensive Coverage:** A wide range of common medical conditions.
 - **Clear and Concise Explanations:** Easy-to-understand language and visual aids.
 - **Up-to-Date Information:** Current best practices and guidelines.
 - **Practical Approach:** Real-world clinical scenarios and case studies.

- **Engaging Content:** Interactive features and learning activities.

This book aims to be a valuable resource for healthcare professionals, students, and patients, providing a comprehensive understanding of a wide range of common medical conditions.

—Editor

Contents

<i>Preface</i>	<i>v</i>
1. Thrombophlebitis	1
<i>Dr. Amit Vyas</i>	
2. Scabies	24
<i>Dr. Amit Vyas</i>	
3. Cancer	46
<i>Dr. Amit Vyas</i>	
4. Autoimmune Disease	63
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
5. Hypersensitivity	82
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
6. Hernia	104
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
7. Hemorrhoids	119
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	
8. Edema	129
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	
9. Wound Healing	143
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	
10. Cerebral Palsy	158
<i>Mr. Hitesh Patidar</i>	
11. Sickle Cell Anemia	183
<i>Mr. Hitesh Patidar</i>	
12. Rickets	202
<i>Mr. Hitesh Patidar</i>	

13. Emergency Nursing	216
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
14. Cerebrovascular Accident	234
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
15. Liver Cirrhosis	251
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
16. Cardiomyopathy	265
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
17. Crohn's Disease	285
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
18. Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease	301
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
19. Diabetes Mellitus	318
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
20. Common Neonatal Problems	330
<i>Ms. Vishva Patel</i>	
21. Patient Safety Indicators	340
<i>Ms. Megha Raval</i>	

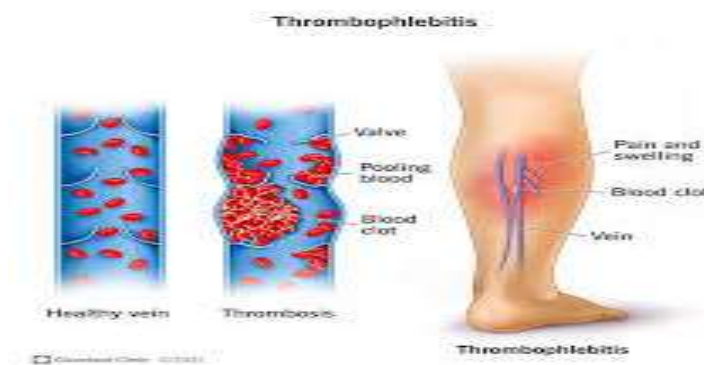
1

Thrombophlebitis

Dr. Amit Vyas¹

1. DEFINITION

Thrombophlebitis is the inflammation of a vein due to the presence of a thrombus (blood clot) within the vein. This condition can cause symptoms such as redness, swelling, pain, and warmth over the affected vein.



2. OBJECTIVE

The objectives of managing thrombophlebitis focus on alleviating symptoms, preventing complications, and addressing the underlying causes. Here's a detailed breakdown of these objectives:

1. Symptom Relief

1. Principle Of Nursing, AION

A Comprehensive Guide to Medical and Surgical Conditions

A Comprehensive Guide to Medical and Surgical Conditions

Editor

Dr. Amit Vyas

MARK PUBLISHERS
JAIPUR

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : A Comprehensive Guide to Medical and Surgical Conditions

Author : Dr. Amit Vyas

Edition : 2021

ISBN : 978-81-89472-35-1

Published by :

Mark Publishers

Jaipur-302 021

Exclusive Distributor

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,

Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,

Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by :

In-house

Preface

Overview

This comprehensive guide offers a detailed exploration of a wide range of common medical conditions, from acute illnesses to chronic diseases. It is designed to provide healthcare professionals, students, and patients with a thorough understanding of the pathophysiology, clinical manifestations, diagnosis, and management of these conditions.

Key Topics

- **Vascular Disorders:**
 - Thrombophlebitis: Inflammation of a vein with a blood clot
- **Skin Disorders:**
 - Scabies: A contagious skin infestation
- **Bone Disorders:**
 - Paget's Disease: A chronic bone disorder
- **Cancer:**
 - Malignant neoplasms and their treatment
- **Immune Disorders:**
 - Autoimmune diseases: Conditions where the immune system attacks the body's own tissues
 - Hypersensitivity reactions: Allergic and other immune responses
- **Gastrointestinal Disorders:**
 - Hernia: A protrusion of an organ or tissue through a weak spot in the muscle or connective tissue
 - Hemorrhoids: Swollen veins in the rectum and anus
- **General Medical Conditions:**

- Edema: Swelling caused by fluid buildup
- Wound Healing: The process of tissue repair
- **Neurological Disorders:**
 - Cerebral Palsy: A group of disorders that affect movement and muscle tone
- **Hematological Disorders:**
 - Sickle Cell Anemia: A genetic blood disorder
 - Rickets: A bone disorder caused by vitamin D deficiency
- **Emergency Medicine:**
 - Cerebrovascular Accident (Stroke): Disruption of blood supply to the brain
- **Liver Diseases:**
 - Liver Cirrhosis: Scarring of the liver
- **Cardiovascular Diseases:**
 - Cardiomyopathy: Diseases of the heart muscle
- **Gastrointestinal Diseases:**
 - Crohn's Disease: A chronic inflammatory bowel disease
- **Respiratory Diseases:**
 - Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease (COPD): A lung disease that obstructs airflow
- **Metabolic Disorders:**
 - Diabetes Mellitus: A metabolic disorder characterized by high blood sugar levels
- **Target Audience**
 - Medical and nursing students
 - Healthcare professionals
 - Patients and their families
- **Unique Selling Points**
 - **Comprehensive Coverage:** A wide range of common medical conditions.
 - **Clear and Concise Explanations:** Easy-to-understand language and visual aids.
 - **Up-to-Date Information:** Current best practices and guidelines.
 - **Practical Approach:** Real-world clinical scenarios and case studies.

- **Engaging Content:** Interactive features and learning activities.

This book aims to be a valuable resource for healthcare professionals, students, and patients, providing a comprehensive understanding of a wide range of common medical conditions.

—Editor

Contents

<i>Preface</i>	<i>v</i>
1. Thrombophlebitis	1
<i>Dr. Amit Vyas</i>	
2. Scabies	24
<i>Dr. Amit Vyas</i>	
3. Cancer	46
<i>Dr. Amit Vyas</i>	
4. Autoimmune Disease	63
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
5. Hypersensitivity	82
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
6. Hernia	104
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
7. Hemorrhoids	119
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	
8. Edema	129
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	
9. Wound Healing	143
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	
10. Cerebral Palsy	158
<i>Mr. Hitesh Patidar</i>	
11. Sickle Cell Anemia	183
<i>Mr. Hitesh Patidar</i>	
12. Rickets	202
<i>Mr. Hitesh Patidar</i>	

13. Emergency Nursing	216
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
14. Cerebrovascular Accident	234
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
15. Liver Cirrhosis	251
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
16. Cardiomyopathy	265
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
17. Crohn's Disease	285
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
18. Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease	301
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
19. Diabetes Mellitus	318
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
20. Common Neonatal Problems	330
<i>Ms. Vishva Patel</i>	
21. Patient Safety Indicators	340
<i>Ms. Megha Raval</i>	

2

Scabies

Dr. Amit Vyas¹

1. DEFINITION

Scabies is a contagious skin condition caused by an infestation of the skin by the *Sarcoptes scabiei* mite. These tiny mites burrow into the upper layer of the skin (epidermis), where they lay eggs and cause a range of skin reactions. The primary characteristics of scabies include intense itching and a rash, which can lead to secondary skin infections due to scratching.



1. Principal of Nursing, AION

A Comprehensive Guide to Medical and Surgical Conditions

A Comprehensive Guide to Medical and Surgical Conditions

Editor

Dr. Amit Vyas

MARK PUBLISHERS
JAIPUR

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : A Comprehensive Guide to Medical and Surgical Conditions

Author : Dr. Amit Vyas

Edition : 2021

ISBN : 978-81-89472-35-1

Published by :

Mark Publishers

Jaipur-302 021

Exclusive Distributor

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,

Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,

Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by :

In-house

Preface

Overview

This comprehensive guide offers a detailed exploration of a wide range of common medical conditions, from acute illnesses to chronic diseases. It is designed to provide healthcare professionals, students, and patients with a thorough understanding of the pathophysiology, clinical manifestations, diagnosis, and management of these conditions.

Key Topics

- **Vascular Disorders:**
 - Thrombophlebitis: Inflammation of a vein with a blood clot
- **Skin Disorders:**
 - Scabies: A contagious skin infestation
- **Bone Disorders:**
 - Paget's Disease: A chronic bone disorder
- **Cancer:**
 - Malignant neoplasms and their treatment
- **Immune Disorders:**
 - Autoimmune diseases: Conditions where the immune system attacks the body's own tissues
 - Hypersensitivity reactions: Allergic and other immune responses
- **Gastrointestinal Disorders:**
 - Hernia: A protrusion of an organ or tissue through a weak spot in the muscle or connective tissue
 - Hemorrhoids: Swollen veins in the rectum and anus
- **General Medical Conditions:**

- Edema: Swelling caused by fluid buildup
- Wound Healing: The process of tissue repair
- **Neurological Disorders:**
 - Cerebral Palsy: A group of disorders that affect movement and muscle tone
- **Hematological Disorders:**
 - Sickle Cell Anemia: A genetic blood disorder
 - Rickets: A bone disorder caused by vitamin D deficiency
- **Emergency Medicine:**
 - Cerebrovascular Accident (Stroke): Disruption of blood supply to the brain
- **Liver Diseases:**
 - Liver Cirrhosis: Scarring of the liver
- **Cardiovascular Diseases:**
 - Cardiomyopathy: Diseases of the heart muscle
- **Gastrointestinal Diseases:**
 - Crohn's Disease: A chronic inflammatory bowel disease
- **Respiratory Diseases:**
 - Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease (COPD): A lung disease that obstructs airflow
- **Metabolic Disorders:**
 - Diabetes Mellitus: A metabolic disorder characterized by high blood sugar levels
- **Target Audience**
 - Medical and nursing students
 - Healthcare professionals
 - Patients and their families
- **Unique Selling Points**
 - **Comprehensive Coverage:** A wide range of common medical conditions.
 - **Clear and Concise Explanations:** Easy-to-understand language and visual aids.
 - **Up-to-Date Information:** Current best practices and guidelines.
 - **Practical Approach:** Real-world clinical scenarios and case studies.

- **Engaging Content:** Interactive features and learning activities.

This book aims to be a valuable resource for healthcare professionals, students, and patients, providing a comprehensive understanding of a wide range of common medical conditions.

—Editor

Contents

<i>Preface</i>	<i>v</i>
1. Thrombophlebitis	1
<i>Dr. Amit Vyas</i>	
2. Scabies	24
<i>Dr. Amit Vyas</i>	
3. Cancer	46
<i>Dr. Amit Vyas</i>	
4. Autoimmune Disease	63
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
5. Hypersensitivity	82
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
6. Hernia	104
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
7. Hemorrhoids	119
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	
8. Edema	129
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	
9. Wound Healing	143
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	
10. Cerebral Palsy	158
<i>Mr. Hitesh Patidar</i>	
11. Sickle Cell Anemia	183
<i>Mr. Hitesh Patidar</i>	
12. Rickets	202
<i>Mr. Hitesh Patidar</i>	

13. Emergency Nursing	216
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
14. Cerebrovascular Accident	234
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
15. Liver Cirrhosis	251
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
16. Cardiomyopathy	265
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
17. Crohn's Disease	285
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
18. Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease	301
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
19. Diabetes Mellitus	318
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
20. Common Neonatal Problems	330
<i>Ms. Vishva Patel</i>	
21. Patient Safety Indicators	340
<i>Ms. Megha Raval</i>	

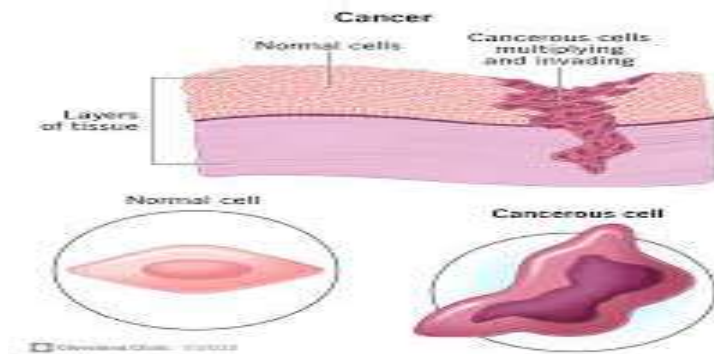
3

Cancer

Dr. Amit Vyas¹

1. DEFINITION

Cancer is a group of diseases characterized by the uncontrolled growth and spread of abnormal cells in the body. These cells can form tumors (mass of tissue) or spread to other parts of the body through the blood and lymphatic systems.



2. OBJECTIVE

The objective of studying and addressing cancer can be viewed from multiple perspectives, each aimed at improving outcomes and understanding:

1. Understanding the Disease: Researchers aim to understand the mechanisms behind cancer development, including genetic, molecular, and environmental factors. This knowl-

1. Principal of Nursing, AION

A Comprehensive Guide to Medical and Surgical Conditions

A Comprehensive Guide to Medical and Surgical Conditions

Editor

Dr. Amit Vyas

MARK PUBLISHERS
JAIPUR

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : A Comprehensive Guide to Medical and Surgical Conditions

Author : Dr. Amit Vyas

Edition : 2021

ISBN : 978-81-89472-35-1

Published by :

Mark Publishers

Jaipur-302 021

Exclusive Distributor

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,

Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,

Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by :

In-house

Preface

Overview

This comprehensive guide offers a detailed exploration of a wide range of common medical conditions, from acute illnesses to chronic diseases. It is designed to provide healthcare professionals, students, and patients with a thorough understanding of the pathophysiology, clinical manifestations, diagnosis, and management of these conditions.

Key Topics

- **Vascular Disorders:**
 - Thrombophlebitis: Inflammation of a vein with a blood clot
- **Skin Disorders:**
 - Scabies: A contagious skin infestation
- **Bone Disorders:**
 - Paget's Disease: A chronic bone disorder
- **Cancer:**
 - Malignant neoplasms and their treatment
- **Immune Disorders:**
 - Autoimmune diseases: Conditions where the immune system attacks the body's own tissues
 - Hypersensitivity reactions: Allergic and other immune responses
- **Gastrointestinal Disorders:**
 - Hernia: A protrusion of an organ or tissue through a weak spot in the muscle or connective tissue
 - Hemorrhoids: Swollen veins in the rectum and anus
- **General Medical Conditions:**

- Edema: Swelling caused by fluid buildup
- Wound Healing: The process of tissue repair
- **Neurological Disorders:**
 - Cerebral Palsy: A group of disorders that affect movement and muscle tone
- **Hematological Disorders:**
 - Sickle Cell Anemia: A genetic blood disorder
 - Rickets: A bone disorder caused by vitamin D deficiency
- **Emergency Medicine:**
 - Cerebrovascular Accident (Stroke): Disruption of blood supply to the brain
- **Liver Diseases:**
 - Liver Cirrhosis: Scarring of the liver
- **Cardiovascular Diseases:**
 - Cardiomyopathy: Diseases of the heart muscle
- **Gastrointestinal Diseases:**
 - Crohn's Disease: A chronic inflammatory bowel disease
- **Respiratory Diseases:**
 - Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease (COPD): A lung disease that obstructs airflow
- **Metabolic Disorders:**
 - Diabetes Mellitus: A metabolic disorder characterized by high blood sugar levels
- **Target Audience**
 - Medical and nursing students
 - Healthcare professionals
 - Patients and their families
- **Unique Selling Points**
 - **Comprehensive Coverage:** A wide range of common medical conditions.
 - **Clear and Concise Explanations:** Easy-to-understand language and visual aids.
 - **Up-to-Date Information:** Current best practices and guidelines.
 - **Practical Approach:** Real-world clinical scenarios and case studies.

- **Engaging Content:** Interactive features and learning activities.

This book aims to be a valuable resource for healthcare professionals, students, and patients, providing a comprehensive understanding of a wide range of common medical conditions.

—Editor

Contents

<i>Preface</i>	<i>v</i>
1. Thrombophlebitis	1
<i>Dr. Amit Vyas</i>	
2. Scabies	24
<i>Dr. Amit Vyas</i>	
3. Cancer	46
<i>Dr. Amit Vyas</i>	
4. Autoimmune Disease	63
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
5. Hypersensitivity	82
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
6. Hernia	104
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
7. Hemorrhoids	119
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	
8. Edema	129
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	
9. Wound Healing	143
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	
10. Cerebral Palsy	158
<i>Mr. Hitesh Patidar</i>	
11. Sickle Cell Anemia	183
<i>Mr. Hitesh Patidar</i>	
12. Rickets	202
<i>Mr. Hitesh Patidar</i>	

13. Emergency Nursing	216
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
14. Cerebrovascular Accident	234
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
15. Liver Cirrhosis	251
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
16. Cardiomyopathy	265
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
17. Crohn's Disease	285
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
18. Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease	301
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
19. Diabetes Mellitus	318
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
20. Common Neonatal Problems	330
<i>Ms. Vishva Patel</i>	
21. Patient Safety Indicators	340
<i>Ms. Megha Raval</i>	

4

Autoimmune Disease

Ms. Sejal Patel¹

1. DEFINITION

An autoimmune disease is a condition in which the immune system mistakenly attacks and destroys the body's own cells, tissues, or organs. This occurs because the immune system fails to recognize these self-structures as part of the body, leading to inflammation, tissue damage, and dysfunction.



2. OBJECTIVE

The term “objective” in the context of autoimmune diseases typically refers to the goals or aims of managing and treating these conditions. The primary objectives include:

1. Reduce Disease Activity:

- Goal: To decrease the inflammatory and destructive activity of the immune system against the body's own tissues.

1. Assistant Professor, AION

A Comprehensive Guide to Medical and Surgical Conditions

A Comprehensive Guide to Medical and Surgical Conditions

Editor

Dr. Amit Vyas

MARK PUBLISHERS
JAIPUR

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : A Comprehensive Guide to Medical and Surgical Conditions

Author : Dr. Amit Vyas

Edition : 2021

ISBN : 978-81-89472-35-1

Published by :

Mark Publishers

Jaipur-302 021

Exclusive Distributor

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,

Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,

Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by :

In-house

Preface

Overview

This comprehensive guide offers a detailed exploration of a wide range of common medical conditions, from acute illnesses to chronic diseases. It is designed to provide healthcare professionals, students, and patients with a thorough understanding of the pathophysiology, clinical manifestations, diagnosis, and management of these conditions.

Key Topics

- **Vascular Disorders:**
 - Thrombophlebitis: Inflammation of a vein with a blood clot
- **Skin Disorders:**
 - Scabies: A contagious skin infestation
- **Bone Disorders:**
 - Paget's Disease: A chronic bone disorder
- **Cancer:**
 - Malignant neoplasms and their treatment
- **Immune Disorders:**
 - Autoimmune diseases: Conditions where the immune system attacks the body's own tissues
 - Hypersensitivity reactions: Allergic and other immune responses
- **Gastrointestinal Disorders:**
 - Hernia: A protrusion of an organ or tissue through a weak spot in the muscle or connective tissue
 - Hemorrhoids: Swollen veins in the rectum and anus
- **General Medical Conditions:**

- Edema: Swelling caused by fluid buildup
- Wound Healing: The process of tissue repair
- **Neurological Disorders:**
 - Cerebral Palsy: A group of disorders that affect movement and muscle tone
- **Hematological Disorders:**
 - Sickle Cell Anemia: A genetic blood disorder
 - Rickets: A bone disorder caused by vitamin D deficiency
- **Emergency Medicine:**
 - Cerebrovascular Accident (Stroke): Disruption of blood supply to the brain
- **Liver Diseases:**
 - Liver Cirrhosis: Scarring of the liver
- **Cardiovascular Diseases:**
 - Cardiomyopathy: Diseases of the heart muscle
- **Gastrointestinal Diseases:**
 - Crohn's Disease: A chronic inflammatory bowel disease
- **Respiratory Diseases:**
 - Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease (COPD): A lung disease that obstructs airflow
- **Metabolic Disorders:**
 - Diabetes Mellitus: A metabolic disorder characterized by high blood sugar levels
- **Target Audience**
 - Medical and nursing students
 - Healthcare professionals
 - Patients and their families
- **Unique Selling Points**
 - **Comprehensive Coverage:** A wide range of common medical conditions.
 - **Clear and Concise Explanations:** Easy-to-understand language and visual aids.
 - **Up-to-Date Information:** Current best practices and guidelines.
 - **Practical Approach:** Real-world clinical scenarios and case studies.

- **Engaging Content:** Interactive features and learning activities.

This book aims to be a valuable resource for healthcare professionals, students, and patients, providing a comprehensive understanding of a wide range of common medical conditions.

—Editor

Contents

<i>Preface</i>	<i>v</i>
1. Thrombophlebitis	1
<i>Dr. Amit Vyas</i>	
2. Scabies	24
<i>Dr. Amit Vyas</i>	
3. Cancer	46
<i>Dr. Amit Vyas</i>	
4. Autoimmune Disease	63
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
5. Hypersensitivity	82
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
6. Hernia	104
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
7. Hemorrhoids	119
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	
8. Edema	129
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	
9. Wound Healing	143
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	
10. Cerebral Palsy	158
<i>Mr. Hitesh Patidar</i>	
11. Sickle Cell Anemia	183
<i>Mr. Hitesh Patidar</i>	
12. Rickets	202
<i>Mr. Hitesh Patidar</i>	

13. Emergency Nursing	216
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
14. Cerebrovascular Accident	234
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
15. Liver Cirrhosis	251
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
16. Cardiomyopathy	265
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
17. Crohn's Disease	285
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
18. Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease	301
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
19. Diabetes Mellitus	318
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
20. Common Neonatal Problems	330
<i>Ms. Vishva Patel</i>	
21. Patient Safety Indicators	340
<i>Ms. Megha Raval</i>	

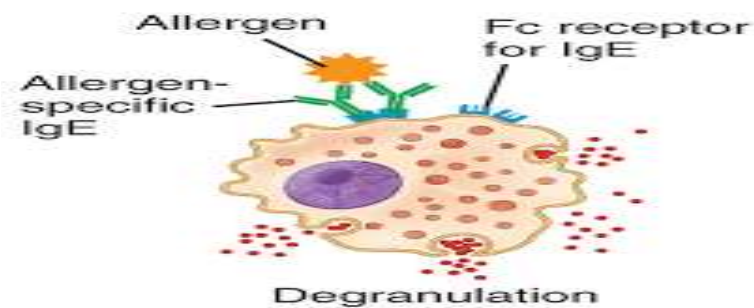
5

Hypersensitivity

Ms. Sejal Patel¹

1. DEFINITION

Hypersensitivity refers to an exaggerated or inappropriate immune response to a substance that is typically harmless. This heightened reaction can lead to tissue damage and various symptoms, ranging from mild to severe.



2. OBJECTIVE

The concept of hypersensitivity primarily focuses on understanding and managing exaggerated immune responses that can lead to tissue damage and clinical symptoms. The “objectives” of addressing hypersensitivity can be broken down into several key areas:

1. Identify and Diagnose:

1. Assistant Professor, AION

A Comprehensive Guide to Medical and Surgical Conditions

A Comprehensive Guide to Medical and Surgical Conditions

Editor

Dr. Amit Vyas

MARK PUBLISHERS
JAIPUR

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : A Comprehensive Guide to Medical and Surgical Conditions

Author : Dr. Amit Vyas

Edition : 2021

ISBN : 978-81-89472-35-1

Published by :

Mark Publishers

Jaipur-302 021

Exclusive Distributor

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,

Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,

Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by :

In-house

Preface

Overview

This comprehensive guide offers a detailed exploration of a wide range of common medical conditions, from acute illnesses to chronic diseases. It is designed to provide healthcare professionals, students, and patients with a thorough understanding of the pathophysiology, clinical manifestations, diagnosis, and management of these conditions.

Key Topics

- **Vascular Disorders:**
 - Thrombophlebitis: Inflammation of a vein with a blood clot
- **Skin Disorders:**
 - Scabies: A contagious skin infestation
- **Bone Disorders:**
 - Paget's Disease: A chronic bone disorder
- **Cancer:**
 - Malignant neoplasms and their treatment
- **Immune Disorders:**
 - Autoimmune diseases: Conditions where the immune system attacks the body's own tissues
 - Hypersensitivity reactions: Allergic and other immune responses
- **Gastrointestinal Disorders:**
 - Hernia: A protrusion of an organ or tissue through a weak spot in the muscle or connective tissue
 - Hemorrhoids: Swollen veins in the rectum and anus
- **General Medical Conditions:**

- Edema: Swelling caused by fluid buildup
- Wound Healing: The process of tissue repair
- **Neurological Disorders:**
 - Cerebral Palsy: A group of disorders that affect movement and muscle tone
- **Hematological Disorders:**
 - Sickle Cell Anemia: A genetic blood disorder
 - Rickets: A bone disorder caused by vitamin D deficiency
- **Emergency Medicine:**
 - Cerebrovascular Accident (Stroke): Disruption of blood supply to the brain
- **Liver Diseases:**
 - Liver Cirrhosis: Scarring of the liver
- **Cardiovascular Diseases:**
 - Cardiomyopathy: Diseases of the heart muscle
- **Gastrointestinal Diseases:**
 - Crohn's Disease: A chronic inflammatory bowel disease
- **Respiratory Diseases:**
 - Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease (COPD): A lung disease that obstructs airflow
- **Metabolic Disorders:**
 - Diabetes Mellitus: A metabolic disorder characterized by high blood sugar levels
- **Target Audience**
 - Medical and nursing students
 - Healthcare professionals
 - Patients and their families
- **Unique Selling Points**
 - **Comprehensive Coverage:** A wide range of common medical conditions.
 - **Clear and Concise Explanations:** Easy-to-understand language and visual aids.
 - **Up-to-Date Information:** Current best practices and guidelines.
 - **Practical Approach:** Real-world clinical scenarios and case studies.

- **Engaging Content:** Interactive features and learning activities.

This book aims to be a valuable resource for healthcare professionals, students, and patients, providing a comprehensive understanding of a wide range of common medical conditions.

—Editor

Contents

<i>Preface</i>	<i>v</i>
1. Thrombophlebitis	1
<i>Dr. Amit Vyas</i>	
2. Scabies	24
<i>Dr. Amit Vyas</i>	
3. Cancer	46
<i>Dr. Amit Vyas</i>	
4. Autoimmune Disease	63
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
5. Hypersensitivity	82
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
6. Hernia	104
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
7. Hemorrhoids	119
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	
8. Edema	129
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	
9. Wound Healing	143
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	
10. Cerebral Palsy	158
<i>Mr. Hitesh Patidar</i>	
11. Sickle Cell Anemia	183
<i>Mr. Hitesh Patidar</i>	
12. Rickets	202
<i>Mr. Hitesh Patidar</i>	

13. Emergency Nursing	216
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
14. Cerebrovascular Accident	234
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
15. Liver Cirrhosis	251
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
16. Cardiomyopathy	265
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
17. Crohn's Disease	285
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
18. Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease	301
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
19. Diabetes Mellitus	318
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
20. Common Neonatal Problems	330
<i>Ms. Vishva Patel</i>	
21. Patient Safety Indicators	340
<i>Ms. Megha Raval</i>	

6

Hernia

Ms. Sejal Patel¹

1. DEFINITION

A hernia is a condition in which an internal organ or tissue protrudes through a weak spot or opening in the surrounding muscle or connective tissue. This can occur in various parts of the body but is most commonly seen in the abdominal region. The protrusion can lead to a visible bulge and may cause discomfort or pain.



2. OBJECTIVE

The term “objective” in the context of a hernia typically refers to the primary goals or purposes associated with managing and treating the condition. Here’s a breakdown of these objectives:

-
1. Assistant Professor, AION

A Comprehensive Guide to Medical and Surgical Conditions

A Comprehensive Guide to Medical and Surgical Conditions

Editor

Dr. Amit Vyas

MARK PUBLISHERS
JAIPUR

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : A Comprehensive Guide to Medical and Surgical Conditions

Author : Dr. Amit Vyas

Edition : 2021

ISBN : 978-81-89472-35-1

Published by :

Mark Publishers

Jaipur-302 021

Exclusive Distributor

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,

Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,

Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by :

In-house

Preface

Overview

This comprehensive guide offers a detailed exploration of a wide range of common medical conditions, from acute illnesses to chronic diseases. It is designed to provide healthcare professionals, students, and patients with a thorough understanding of the pathophysiology, clinical manifestations, diagnosis, and management of these conditions.

Key Topics

- **Vascular Disorders:**
 - Thrombophlebitis: Inflammation of a vein with a blood clot
- **Skin Disorders:**
 - Scabies: A contagious skin infestation
- **Bone Disorders:**
 - Paget's Disease: A chronic bone disorder
- **Cancer:**
 - Malignant neoplasms and their treatment
- **Immune Disorders:**
 - Autoimmune diseases: Conditions where the immune system attacks the body's own tissues
 - Hypersensitivity reactions: Allergic and other immune responses
- **Gastrointestinal Disorders:**
 - Hernia: A protrusion of an organ or tissue through a weak spot in the muscle or connective tissue
 - Hemorrhoids: Swollen veins in the rectum and anus
- **General Medical Conditions:**

- Edema: Swelling caused by fluid buildup
- Wound Healing: The process of tissue repair
- **Neurological Disorders:**
 - Cerebral Palsy: A group of disorders that affect movement and muscle tone
- **Hematological Disorders:**
 - Sickle Cell Anemia: A genetic blood disorder
 - Rickets: A bone disorder caused by vitamin D deficiency
- **Emergency Medicine:**
 - Cerebrovascular Accident (Stroke): Disruption of blood supply to the brain
- **Liver Diseases:**
 - Liver Cirrhosis: Scarring of the liver
- **Cardiovascular Diseases:**
 - Cardiomyopathy: Diseases of the heart muscle
- **Gastrointestinal Diseases:**
 - Crohn's Disease: A chronic inflammatory bowel disease
- **Respiratory Diseases:**
 - Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease (COPD): A lung disease that obstructs airflow
- **Metabolic Disorders:**
 - Diabetes Mellitus: A metabolic disorder characterized by high blood sugar levels
- **Target Audience**
 - Medical and nursing students
 - Healthcare professionals
 - Patients and their families
- **Unique Selling Points**
 - **Comprehensive Coverage:** A wide range of common medical conditions.
 - **Clear and Concise Explanations:** Easy-to-understand language and visual aids.
 - **Up-to-Date Information:** Current best practices and guidelines.
 - **Practical Approach:** Real-world clinical scenarios and case studies.

- **Engaging Content:** Interactive features and learning activities.

This book aims to be a valuable resource for healthcare professionals, students, and patients, providing a comprehensive understanding of a wide range of common medical conditions.

—Editor

Contents

<i>Preface</i>	<i>v</i>
1. Thrombophlebitis	1
<i>Dr. Amit Vyas</i>	
2. Scabies	24
<i>Dr. Amit Vyas</i>	
3. Cancer	46
<i>Dr. Amit Vyas</i>	
4. Autoimmune Disease	63
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
5. Hypersensitivity	82
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
6. Hernia	104
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
7. Hemorrhoids	119
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	
8. Edema	129
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	
9. Wound Healing	143
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	
10. Cerebral Palsy	158
<i>Mr. Hitesh Patidar</i>	
11. Sickle Cell Anemia	183
<i>Mr. Hitesh Patidar</i>	
12. Rickets	202
<i>Mr. Hitesh Patidar</i>	

13. Emergency Nursing	216
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
14. Cerebrovascular Accident	234
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
15. Liver Cirrhosis	251
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
16. Cardiomyopathy	265
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
17. Crohn's Disease	285
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
18. Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease	301
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
19. Diabetes Mellitus	318
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
20. Common Neonatal Problems	330
<i>Ms. Vishva Patel</i>	
21. Patient Safety Indicators	340
<i>Ms. Megha Raval</i>	

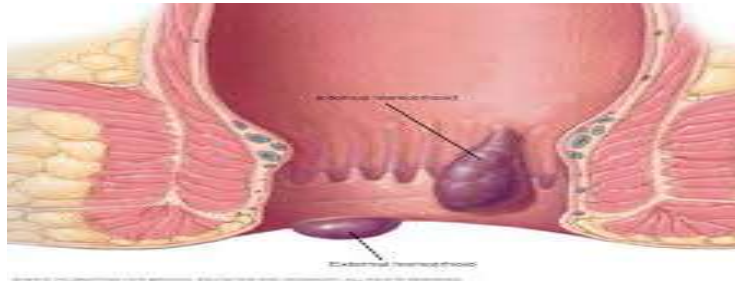
7

Hemorrhoids

Ms. Pinal Ghoghara¹

1. DEFINITION

Hemorrhoids are swollen blood vessels in the lower part of the rectum and anus. They can be internal (inside the rectum) or external (under the skin around the anus). Symptoms might include itching, pain, bleeding during bowel movements, or swelling. They can be caused by factors like straining during bowel movements, sitting for long periods, or increased pressure during pregnancy. Treatment often involves lifestyle changes, over-the-counter medications, and sometimes medical procedures for more severe cases.



2. OBJECTIVE

Hemorrhoids don't have an "objective" in the sense of having a purpose or goal, as they are a medical condition

1. Assistant Professor, AION

A Comprehensive Guide to Medical and Surgical Conditions

A Comprehensive Guide to Medical and Surgical Conditions

Editor

Dr. Amit Vyas

MARK PUBLISHERS
JAIPUR

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : A Comprehensive Guide to Medical and Surgical Conditions

Author : Dr. Amit Vyas

Edition : 2021

ISBN : 978-81-89472-35-1

Published by :

Mark Publishers

Jaipur-302 021

Exclusive Distributor

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,

Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,

Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by :

In-house

Preface

Overview

This comprehensive guide offers a detailed exploration of a wide range of common medical conditions, from acute illnesses to chronic diseases. It is designed to provide healthcare professionals, students, and patients with a thorough understanding of the pathophysiology, clinical manifestations, diagnosis, and management of these conditions.

Key Topics

- **Vascular Disorders:**
 - Thrombophlebitis: Inflammation of a vein with a blood clot
- **Skin Disorders:**
 - Scabies: A contagious skin infestation
- **Bone Disorders:**
 - Paget's Disease: A chronic bone disorder
- **Cancer:**
 - Malignant neoplasms and their treatment
- **Immune Disorders:**
 - Autoimmune diseases: Conditions where the immune system attacks the body's own tissues
 - Hypersensitivity reactions: Allergic and other immune responses
- **Gastrointestinal Disorders:**
 - Hernia: A protrusion of an organ or tissue through a weak spot in the muscle or connective tissue
 - Hemorrhoids: Swollen veins in the rectum and anus
- **General Medical Conditions:**

- Edema: Swelling caused by fluid buildup
- Wound Healing: The process of tissue repair
- **Neurological Disorders:**
 - Cerebral Palsy: A group of disorders that affect movement and muscle tone
- **Hematological Disorders:**
 - Sickle Cell Anemia: A genetic blood disorder
 - Rickets: A bone disorder caused by vitamin D deficiency
- **Emergency Medicine:**
 - Cerebrovascular Accident (Stroke): Disruption of blood supply to the brain
- **Liver Diseases:**
 - Liver Cirrhosis: Scarring of the liver
- **Cardiovascular Diseases:**
 - Cardiomyopathy: Diseases of the heart muscle
- **Gastrointestinal Diseases:**
 - Crohn's Disease: A chronic inflammatory bowel disease
- **Respiratory Diseases:**
 - Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease (COPD): A lung disease that obstructs airflow
- **Metabolic Disorders:**
 - Diabetes Mellitus: A metabolic disorder characterized by high blood sugar levels
- **Target Audience**
 - Medical and nursing students
 - Healthcare professionals
 - Patients and their families
- **Unique Selling Points**
 - **Comprehensive Coverage:** A wide range of common medical conditions.
 - **Clear and Concise Explanations:** Easy-to-understand language and visual aids.
 - **Up-to-Date Information:** Current best practices and guidelines.
 - **Practical Approach:** Real-world clinical scenarios and case studies.

- **Engaging Content:** Interactive features and learning activities.

This book aims to be a valuable resource for healthcare professionals, students, and patients, providing a comprehensive understanding of a wide range of common medical conditions.

—Editor

Contents

<i>Preface</i>	<i>v</i>
1. Thrombophlebitis	1
<i>Dr. Amit Vyas</i>	
2. Scabies	24
<i>Dr. Amit Vyas</i>	
3. Cancer	46
<i>Dr. Amit Vyas</i>	
4. Autoimmune Disease	63
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
5. Hypersensitivity	82
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
6. Hernia	104
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
7. Hemorrhoids	119
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	
8. Edema	129
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	
9. Wound Healing	143
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	
10. Cerebral Palsy	158
<i>Mr. Hitesh Patidar</i>	
11. Sickle Cell Anemia	183
<i>Mr. Hitesh Patidar</i>	
12. Rickets	202
<i>Mr. Hitesh Patidar</i>	

13. Emergency Nursing	216
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
14. Cerebrovascular Accident	234
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
15. Liver Cirrhosis	251
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
16. Cardiomyopathy	265
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
17. Crohn's Disease	285
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
18. Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease	301
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
19. Diabetes Mellitus	318
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
20. Common Neonatal Problems	330
<i>Ms. Vishva Patel</i>	
21. Patient Safety Indicators	340
<i>Ms. Megha Raval</i>	

Ms. Pinal Ghoghara¹

1. DEFINITION

Edema is a medical condition characterized by the accumulation of excess fluid in the tissues of the body, which leads to swelling. This swelling can occur in various parts of the body, including the legs, arms, feet, and face.



2. OBJECTIVE

The term “objective of edema” isn’t commonly used in medical terminology, but if you’re referring to understanding the purpose or significance of edema from a clinical perspective, here’s a breakdown:

1. Indication of Underlying Conditions: Edema often serves as a clinical sign indicating that there is an underlying health issue. It helps healthcare professionals diagnose and

1. Assistant Professor, AION

A Comprehensive Guide to Medical and Surgical Conditions

A Comprehensive Guide to Medical and Surgical Conditions

Editor

Dr. Amit Vyas

MARK PUBLISHERS
JAIPUR

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : A Comprehensive Guide to Medical and Surgical Conditions

Author : Dr. Amit Vyas

Edition : 2021

ISBN : 978-81-89472-35-1

Published by :

Mark Publishers

Jaipur-302 021

Exclusive Distributor

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,

Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,

Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by :

In-house

Preface

Overview

This comprehensive guide offers a detailed exploration of a wide range of common medical conditions, from acute illnesses to chronic diseases. It is designed to provide healthcare professionals, students, and patients with a thorough understanding of the pathophysiology, clinical manifestations, diagnosis, and management of these conditions.

Key Topics

- **Vascular Disorders:**
 - Thrombophlebitis: Inflammation of a vein with a blood clot
- **Skin Disorders:**
 - Scabies: A contagious skin infestation
- **Bone Disorders:**
 - Paget's Disease: A chronic bone disorder
- **Cancer:**
 - Malignant neoplasms and their treatment
- **Immune Disorders:**
 - Autoimmune diseases: Conditions where the immune system attacks the body's own tissues
 - Hypersensitivity reactions: Allergic and other immune responses
- **Gastrointestinal Disorders:**
 - Hernia: A protrusion of an organ or tissue through a weak spot in the muscle or connective tissue
 - Hemorrhoids: Swollen veins in the rectum and anus
- **General Medical Conditions:**

- Edema: Swelling caused by fluid buildup
- Wound Healing: The process of tissue repair
- **Neurological Disorders:**
 - Cerebral Palsy: A group of disorders that affect movement and muscle tone
- **Hematological Disorders:**
 - Sickle Cell Anemia: A genetic blood disorder
 - Rickets: A bone disorder caused by vitamin D deficiency
- **Emergency Medicine:**
 - Cerebrovascular Accident (Stroke): Disruption of blood supply to the brain
- **Liver Diseases:**
 - Liver Cirrhosis: Scarring of the liver
- **Cardiovascular Diseases:**
 - Cardiomyopathy: Diseases of the heart muscle
- **Gastrointestinal Diseases:**
 - Crohn's Disease: A chronic inflammatory bowel disease
- **Respiratory Diseases:**
 - Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease (COPD): A lung disease that obstructs airflow
- **Metabolic Disorders:**
 - Diabetes Mellitus: A metabolic disorder characterized by high blood sugar levels
- **Target Audience**
 - Medical and nursing students
 - Healthcare professionals
 - Patients and their families
- **Unique Selling Points**
 - **Comprehensive Coverage:** A wide range of common medical conditions.
 - **Clear and Concise Explanations:** Easy-to-understand language and visual aids.
 - **Up-to-Date Information:** Current best practices and guidelines.
 - **Practical Approach:** Real-world clinical scenarios and case studies.

- **Engaging Content:** Interactive features and learning activities.

This book aims to be a valuable resource for healthcare professionals, students, and patients, providing a comprehensive understanding of a wide range of common medical conditions.

—Editor

Contents

<i>Preface</i>	<i>v</i>
1. Thrombophlebitis	1
<i>Dr. Amit Vyas</i>	
2. Scabies	24
<i>Dr. Amit Vyas</i>	
3. Cancer	46
<i>Dr. Amit Vyas</i>	
4. Autoimmune Disease	63
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
5. Hypersensitivity	82
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
6. Hernia	104
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
7. Hemorrhoids	119
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	
8. Edema	129
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	
9. Wound Healing	143
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	
10. Cerebral Palsy	158
<i>Mr. Hitesh Patidar</i>	
11. Sickle Cell Anemia	183
<i>Mr. Hitesh Patidar</i>	
12. Rickets	202
<i>Mr. Hitesh Patidar</i>	

13. Emergency Nursing	216
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
14. Cerebrovascular Accident	234
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
15. Liver Cirrhosis	251
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
16. Cardiomyopathy	265
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
17. Crohn's Disease	285
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
18. Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease	301
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
19. Diabetes Mellitus	318
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
20. Common Neonatal Problems	330
<i>Ms. Vishva Patel</i>	
21. Patient Safety Indicators	340
<i>Ms. Megha Raval</i>	

9

Wound Healing

Ms. Pinal Ghoghara¹

1. DEFINITION

Wound healing is a complex biological process through which the body repairs and restores damaged tissues.



2. OBJECTIVE

The primary objective of wound healing is to restore tissue integrity and function following injury. This involves several key goals:

1. **Closure of the Wound:** The immediate objective is to close the wound to prevent further injury or infection. This involves the formation of a clot, followed by tissue repair mechanisms that gradually seal the wound.

1. Nursing Tutor, AION

A Comprehensive Guide to Medical and Surgical Conditions

A Comprehensive Guide to Medical and Surgical Conditions

Editor

Dr. Amit Vyas

MARK PUBLISHERS
JAIPUR

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : A Comprehensive Guide to Medical and Surgical Conditions

Author : Dr. Amit Vyas

Edition : 2021

ISBN : 978-81-89472-35-1

Published by :

Mark Publishers

Jaipur-302 021

Exclusive Distributor

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,

Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,

Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by :

In-house

Preface

Overview

This comprehensive guide offers a detailed exploration of a wide range of common medical conditions, from acute illnesses to chronic diseases. It is designed to provide healthcare professionals, students, and patients with a thorough understanding of the pathophysiology, clinical manifestations, diagnosis, and management of these conditions.

Key Topics

- **Vascular Disorders:**
 - Thrombophlebitis: Inflammation of a vein with a blood clot
- **Skin Disorders:**
 - Scabies: A contagious skin infestation
- **Bone Disorders:**
 - Paget's Disease: A chronic bone disorder
- **Cancer:**
 - Malignant neoplasms and their treatment
- **Immune Disorders:**
 - Autoimmune diseases: Conditions where the immune system attacks the body's own tissues
 - Hypersensitivity reactions: Allergic and other immune responses
- **Gastrointestinal Disorders:**
 - Hernia: A protrusion of an organ or tissue through a weak spot in the muscle or connective tissue
 - Hemorrhoids: Swollen veins in the rectum and anus
- **General Medical Conditions:**

- Edema: Swelling caused by fluid buildup
- Wound Healing: The process of tissue repair
- **Neurological Disorders:**
 - Cerebral Palsy: A group of disorders that affect movement and muscle tone
- **Hematological Disorders:**
 - Sickle Cell Anemia: A genetic blood disorder
 - Rickets: A bone disorder caused by vitamin D deficiency
- **Emergency Medicine:**
 - Cerebrovascular Accident (Stroke): Disruption of blood supply to the brain
- **Liver Diseases:**
 - Liver Cirrhosis: Scarring of the liver
- **Cardiovascular Diseases:**
 - Cardiomyopathy: Diseases of the heart muscle
- **Gastrointestinal Diseases:**
 - Crohn's Disease: A chronic inflammatory bowel disease
- **Respiratory Diseases:**
 - Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease (COPD): A lung disease that obstructs airflow
- **Metabolic Disorders:**
 - Diabetes Mellitus: A metabolic disorder characterized by high blood sugar levels
- **Target Audience**
 - Medical and nursing students
 - Healthcare professionals
 - Patients and their families
- **Unique Selling Points**
 - **Comprehensive Coverage:** A wide range of common medical conditions.
 - **Clear and Concise Explanations:** Easy-to-understand language and visual aids.
 - **Up-to-Date Information:** Current best practices and guidelines.
 - **Practical Approach:** Real-world clinical scenarios and case studies.

- **Engaging Content:** Interactive features and learning activities.

This book aims to be a valuable resource for healthcare professionals, students, and patients, providing a comprehensive understanding of a wide range of common medical conditions.

—Editor

Contents

<i>Preface</i>	<i>v</i>
1. Thrombophlebitis	1
<i>Dr. Amit Vyas</i>	
2. Scabies	24
<i>Dr. Amit Vyas</i>	
3. Cancer	46
<i>Dr. Amit Vyas</i>	
4. Autoimmune Disease	63
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
5. Hypersensitivity	82
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
6. Hernia	104
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
7. Hemorrhoids	119
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	
8. Edema	129
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	
9. Wound Healing	143
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	
10. Cerebral Palsy	158
<i>Mr. Hitesh Patidar</i>	
11. Sickle Cell Anemia	183
<i>Mr. Hitesh Patidar</i>	
12. Rickets	202
<i>Mr. Hitesh Patidar</i>	

13. Emergency Nursing	216
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
14. Cerebrovascular Accident	234
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
15. Liver Cirrhosis	251
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
16. Cardiomyopathy	265
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
17. Crohn's Disease	285
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
18. Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease	301
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
19. Diabetes Mellitus	318
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
20. Common Neonatal Problems	330
<i>Ms. Vishva Patel</i>	
21. Patient Safety Indicators	340
<i>Ms. Megha Raval</i>	

1. Definition

Cerebral palsy is a neurological disorder that results from damage to one or more areas of the brain that control muscle movements. This damage disrupts the brain's ability to coordinate and regulate muscle movements, leading to various motor impairments and physical disabilities. The damage to the brain is typically non-progressive, meaning that it does not worsen over time, though the symptoms and their impact can change as the individual grows.



1. Assistant Professor, AION

A Comprehensive Guide to Medical and Surgical Conditions

A Comprehensive Guide to Medical and Surgical Conditions

Editor

Dr. Amit Vyas

MARK PUBLISHERS
JAIPUR

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : A Comprehensive Guide to Medical and Surgical Conditions

Author : Dr. Amit Vyas

Edition : 2021

ISBN : 978-81-89472-35-1

Published by :

Mark Publishers

Jaipur-302 021

Exclusive Distributor

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,

Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,

Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by :

In-house

Preface

Overview

This comprehensive guide offers a detailed exploration of a wide range of common medical conditions, from acute illnesses to chronic diseases. It is designed to provide healthcare professionals, students, and patients with a thorough understanding of the pathophysiology, clinical manifestations, diagnosis, and management of these conditions.

Key Topics

- **Vascular Disorders:**
 - Thrombophlebitis: Inflammation of a vein with a blood clot
- **Skin Disorders:**
 - Scabies: A contagious skin infestation
- **Bone Disorders:**
 - Paget's Disease: A chronic bone disorder
- **Cancer:**
 - Malignant neoplasms and their treatment
- **Immune Disorders:**
 - Autoimmune diseases: Conditions where the immune system attacks the body's own tissues
 - Hypersensitivity reactions: Allergic and other immune responses
- **Gastrointestinal Disorders:**
 - Hernia: A protrusion of an organ or tissue through a weak spot in the muscle or connective tissue
 - Hemorrhoids: Swollen veins in the rectum and anus
- **General Medical Conditions:**

- Edema: Swelling caused by fluid buildup
- Wound Healing: The process of tissue repair
- **Neurological Disorders:**
 - Cerebral Palsy: A group of disorders that affect movement and muscle tone
- **Hematological Disorders:**
 - Sickle Cell Anemia: A genetic blood disorder
 - Rickets: A bone disorder caused by vitamin D deficiency
- **Emergency Medicine:**
 - Cerebrovascular Accident (Stroke): Disruption of blood supply to the brain
- **Liver Diseases:**
 - Liver Cirrhosis: Scarring of the liver
- **Cardiovascular Diseases:**
 - Cardiomyopathy: Diseases of the heart muscle
- **Gastrointestinal Diseases:**
 - Crohn's Disease: A chronic inflammatory bowel disease
- **Respiratory Diseases:**
 - Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease (COPD): A lung disease that obstructs airflow
- **Metabolic Disorders:**
 - Diabetes Mellitus: A metabolic disorder characterized by high blood sugar levels
- **Target Audience**
 - Medical and nursing students
 - Healthcare professionals
 - Patients and their families
- **Unique Selling Points**
 - **Comprehensive Coverage:** A wide range of common medical conditions.
 - **Clear and Concise Explanations:** Easy-to-understand language and visual aids.
 - **Up-to-Date Information:** Current best practices and guidelines.
 - **Practical Approach:** Real-world clinical scenarios and case studies.

- **Engaging Content:** Interactive features and learning activities.

This book aims to be a valuable resource for healthcare professionals, students, and patients, providing a comprehensive understanding of a wide range of common medical conditions.

—Editor

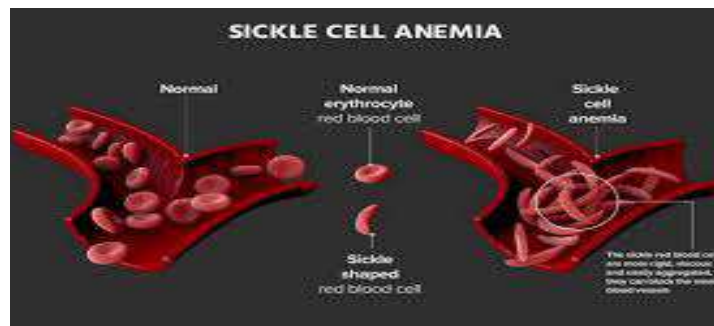
Contents

<i>Preface</i>	<i>v</i>
1. Thrombophlebitis	1
<i>Dr. Amit Vyas</i>	
2. Scabies	24
<i>Dr. Amit Vyas</i>	
3. Cancer	46
<i>Dr. Amit Vyas</i>	
4. Autoimmune Disease	63
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
5. Hypersensitivity	82
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
6. Hernia	104
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
7. Hemorrhoids	119
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	
8. Edema	129
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	
9. Wound Healing	143
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	
10. Cerebral Palsy	158
<i>Mr. Hitesh Patidar</i>	
11. Sickle Cell Anemia	183
<i>Mr. Hitesh Patidar</i>	
12. Rickets	202
<i>Mr. Hitesh Patidar</i>	

13. Emergency Nursing	216
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
14. Cerebrovascular Accident	234
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
15. Liver Cirrhosis	251
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
16. Cardiomyopathy	265
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
17. Crohn's Disease	285
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
18. Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease	301
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
19. Diabetes Mellitus	318
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
20. Common Neonatal Problems	330
<i>Ms. Vishva Patel</i>	
21. Patient Safety Indicators	340
<i>Ms. Megha Raval</i>	

1. DEFINITION

Sickle cell anemia is a genetic disorder characterized by the production of abnormal hemoglobin, known as hemoglobin S, which causes red blood cells to become rigid, sticky, and shaped like a crescent or sickle. These abnormally shaped cells can cause blockages in small blood vessels, leading to various complications and symptoms.



2. OBJECTIVE

The objectives of managing sickle cell anemia are aimed at improving patient outcomes, minimizing complications, and enhancing quality of life. Here are the primary objectives:

1. Pain Management

1. Associate Professor, AION

A Comprehensive Guide to Medical and Surgical Conditions

A Comprehensive Guide to Medical and Surgical Conditions

Editor

Dr. Amit Vyas

MARK PUBLISHERS
JAIPUR

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : A Comprehensive Guide to Medical and Surgical Conditions

Author : Dr. Amit Vyas

Edition : 2021

ISBN : 978-81-89472-35-1

Published by :

Mark Publishers

Jaipur-302 021

Exclusive Distributor

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,

Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,

Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by :

In-house

Preface

Overview

This comprehensive guide offers a detailed exploration of a wide range of common medical conditions, from acute illnesses to chronic diseases. It is designed to provide healthcare professionals, students, and patients with a thorough understanding of the pathophysiology, clinical manifestations, diagnosis, and management of these conditions.

Key Topics

- **Vascular Disorders:**
 - Thrombophlebitis: Inflammation of a vein with a blood clot
- **Skin Disorders:**
 - Scabies: A contagious skin infestation
- **Bone Disorders:**
 - Paget's Disease: A chronic bone disorder
- **Cancer:**
 - Malignant neoplasms and their treatment
- **Immune Disorders:**
 - Autoimmune diseases: Conditions where the immune system attacks the body's own tissues
 - Hypersensitivity reactions: Allergic and other immune responses
- **Gastrointestinal Disorders:**
 - Hernia: A protrusion of an organ or tissue through a weak spot in the muscle or connective tissue
 - Hemorrhoids: Swollen veins in the rectum and anus
- **General Medical Conditions:**

- Edema: Swelling caused by fluid buildup
- Wound Healing: The process of tissue repair
- **Neurological Disorders:**
 - Cerebral Palsy: A group of disorders that affect movement and muscle tone
- **Hematological Disorders:**
 - Sickle Cell Anemia: A genetic blood disorder
 - Rickets: A bone disorder caused by vitamin D deficiency
- **Emergency Medicine:**
 - Cerebrovascular Accident (Stroke): Disruption of blood supply to the brain
- **Liver Diseases:**
 - Liver Cirrhosis: Scarring of the liver
- **Cardiovascular Diseases:**
 - Cardiomyopathy: Diseases of the heart muscle
- **Gastrointestinal Diseases:**
 - Crohn's Disease: A chronic inflammatory bowel disease
- **Respiratory Diseases:**
 - Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease (COPD): A lung disease that obstructs airflow
- **Metabolic Disorders:**
 - Diabetes Mellitus: A metabolic disorder characterized by high blood sugar levels
- **Target Audience**
 - Medical and nursing students
 - Healthcare professionals
 - Patients and their families
- **Unique Selling Points**
 - **Comprehensive Coverage:** A wide range of common medical conditions.
 - **Clear and Concise Explanations:** Easy-to-understand language and visual aids.
 - **Up-to-Date Information:** Current best practices and guidelines.
 - **Practical Approach:** Real-world clinical scenarios and case studies.

- **Engaging Content:** Interactive features and learning activities.

This book aims to be a valuable resource for healthcare professionals, students, and patients, providing a comprehensive understanding of a wide range of common medical conditions.

—Editor

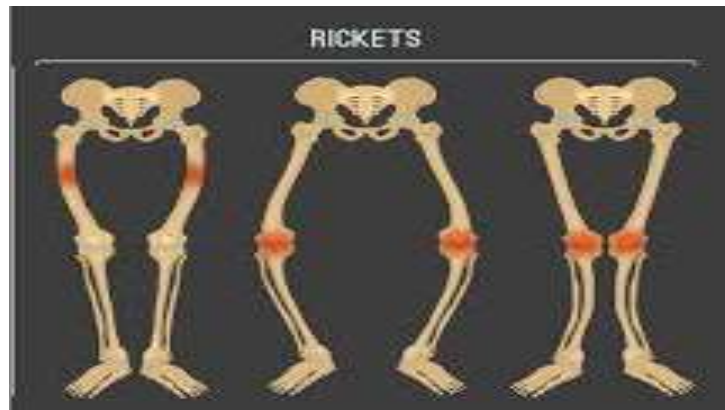
Contents

<i>Preface</i>	<i>v</i>
1. Thrombophlebitis	1
<i>Dr. Amit Vyas</i>	
2. Scabies	24
<i>Dr. Amit Vyas</i>	
3. Cancer	46
<i>Dr. Amit Vyas</i>	
4. Autoimmune Disease	63
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
5. Hypersensitivity	82
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
6. Hernia	104
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
7. Hemorrhoids	119
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	
8. Edema	129
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	
9. Wound Healing	143
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	
10. Cerebral Palsy	158
<i>Mr. Hitesh Patidar</i>	
11. Sickle Cell Anemia	183
<i>Mr. Hitesh Patidar</i>	
12. Rickets	202
<i>Mr. Hitesh Patidar</i>	

13. Emergency Nursing	216
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
14. Cerebrovascular Accident	234
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
15. Liver Cirrhosis	251
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
16. Cardiomyopathy	265
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
17. Crohn's Disease	285
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
18. Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease	301
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
19. Diabetes Mellitus	318
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
20. Common Neonatal Problems	330
<i>Ms. Vishva Patel</i>	
21. Patient Safety Indicators	340
<i>Ms. Megha Raval</i>	

1. DEFINITION

Rickets is a bone disorder that affects children, primarily due to a deficiency in vitamin D, calcium, or phosphate.

**2. OBJECTIVE**

The term “objective” in relation to rickets might be a bit unclear, as it usually refers to goals or purposes rather than a condition itself. However, if you’re asking about the objective in managing or understanding rickets, here are some key goals:

1. Prevention: Ensure adequate intake of vitamin D, calcium, and phosphate through diet and supplementation to prevent the onset of rickets.

1. Associate Professor, AION

A Comprehensive Guide to Medical and Surgical Conditions

A Comprehensive Guide to Medical and Surgical Conditions

Editor

Dr. Amit Vyas

MARK PUBLISHERS
JAIPUR

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : A Comprehensive Guide to Medical and Surgical Conditions

Author : Dr. Amit Vyas

Edition : 2021

ISBN : 978-81-89472-35-1

Published by :

Mark Publishers

Jaipur-302 021

Exclusive Distributor

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,

Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,

Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by :

In-house

Preface

Overview

This comprehensive guide offers a detailed exploration of a wide range of common medical conditions, from acute illnesses to chronic diseases. It is designed to provide healthcare professionals, students, and patients with a thorough understanding of the pathophysiology, clinical manifestations, diagnosis, and management of these conditions.

Key Topics

- **Vascular Disorders:**
 - Thrombophlebitis: Inflammation of a vein with a blood clot
- **Skin Disorders:**
 - Scabies: A contagious skin infestation
- **Bone Disorders:**
 - Paget's Disease: A chronic bone disorder
- **Cancer:**
 - Malignant neoplasms and their treatment
- **Immune Disorders:**
 - Autoimmune diseases: Conditions where the immune system attacks the body's own tissues
 - Hypersensitivity reactions: Allergic and other immune responses
- **Gastrointestinal Disorders:**
 - Hernia: A protrusion of an organ or tissue through a weak spot in the muscle or connective tissue
 - Hemorrhoids: Swollen veins in the rectum and anus
- **General Medical Conditions:**

- Edema: Swelling caused by fluid buildup
- Wound Healing: The process of tissue repair
- **Neurological Disorders:**
 - Cerebral Palsy: A group of disorders that affect movement and muscle tone
- **Hematological Disorders:**
 - Sickle Cell Anemia: A genetic blood disorder
 - Rickets: A bone disorder caused by vitamin D deficiency
- **Emergency Medicine:**
 - Cerebrovascular Accident (Stroke): Disruption of blood supply to the brain
- **Liver Diseases:**
 - Liver Cirrhosis: Scarring of the liver
- **Cardiovascular Diseases:**
 - Cardiomyopathy: Diseases of the heart muscle
- **Gastrointestinal Diseases:**
 - Crohn's Disease: A chronic inflammatory bowel disease
- **Respiratory Diseases:**
 - Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease (COPD): A lung disease that obstructs airflow
- **Metabolic Disorders:**
 - Diabetes Mellitus: A metabolic disorder characterized by high blood sugar levels
- **Target Audience**
 - Medical and nursing students
 - Healthcare professionals
 - Patients and their families
- **Unique Selling Points**
 - **Comprehensive Coverage:** A wide range of common medical conditions.
 - **Clear and Concise Explanations:** Easy-to-understand language and visual aids.
 - **Up-to-Date Information:** Current best practices and guidelines.
 - **Practical Approach:** Real-world clinical scenarios and case studies.

- **Engaging Content:** Interactive features and learning activities.

This book aims to be a valuable resource for healthcare professionals, students, and patients, providing a comprehensive understanding of a wide range of common medical conditions.

—Editor

Contents

<i>Preface</i>	<i>v</i>
1. Thrombophlebitis	1
<i>Dr. Amit Vyas</i>	
2. Scabies	24
<i>Dr. Amit Vyas</i>	
3. Cancer	46
<i>Dr. Amit Vyas</i>	
4. Autoimmune Disease	63
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
5. Hypersensitivity	82
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
6. Hernia	104
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
7. Hemorrhoids	119
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	
8. Edema	129
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	
9. Wound Healing	143
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	
10. Cerebral Palsy	158
<i>Mr. Hitesh Patidar</i>	
11. Sickle Cell Anemia	183
<i>Mr. Hitesh Patidar</i>	
12. Rickets	202
<i>Mr. Hitesh Patidar</i>	

13. Emergency Nursing	216
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
14. Cerebrovascular Accident	234
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
15. Liver Cirrhosis	251
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
16. Cardiomyopathy	265
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
17. Crohn's Disease	285
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
18. Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease	301
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
19. Diabetes Mellitus	318
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
20. Common Neonatal Problems	330
<i>Ms. Vishva Patel</i>	
21. Patient Safety Indicators	340
<i>Ms. Megha Raval</i>	

13

Emergency Nursing

Ms. Saloni Patel¹

1. DEFINITION

Emergency nursing is a specialized field of nursing focused on providing immediate and comprehensive care to patients experiencing acute or life-threatening medical conditions.



2. OBJECTIVE

The primary objectives of emergency nursing are to ensure the immediate and effective care of patients in urgent and often high-stress situations. These objectives include:

1. **Rapid Assessment and Triage:** To quickly and accurately assess patients' conditions, prioritize care based on the severity of their symptoms, and triage patients efficiently to manage resources and ensure the most critical cases receive prompt attention.
2. **Immediate Stabilization and Treatment:** To provide urgent medical interventions and stabilize patients experiencing

1. Nursing Tutor, AION

A Comprehensive Guide to Medical and Surgical Conditions

A Comprehensive Guide to Medical and Surgical Conditions

Editor

Dr. Amit Vyas

MARK PUBLISHERS
JAIPUR

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : A Comprehensive Guide to Medical and Surgical Conditions

Author : Dr. Amit Vyas

Edition : 2021

ISBN : 978-81-89472-35-1

Published by :

Mark Publishers

Jaipur-302 021

Exclusive Distributor

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,

Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,

Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by :

In-house

Preface

Overview

This comprehensive guide offers a detailed exploration of a wide range of common medical conditions, from acute illnesses to chronic diseases. It is designed to provide healthcare professionals, students, and patients with a thorough understanding of the pathophysiology, clinical manifestations, diagnosis, and management of these conditions.

Key Topics

- **Vascular Disorders:**
 - Thrombophlebitis: Inflammation of a vein with a blood clot
- **Skin Disorders:**
 - Scabies: A contagious skin infestation
- **Bone Disorders:**
 - Paget's Disease: A chronic bone disorder
- **Cancer:**
 - Malignant neoplasms and their treatment
- **Immune Disorders:**
 - Autoimmune diseases: Conditions where the immune system attacks the body's own tissues
 - Hypersensitivity reactions: Allergic and other immune responses
- **Gastrointestinal Disorders:**
 - Hernia: A protrusion of an organ or tissue through a weak spot in the muscle or connective tissue
 - Hemorrhoids: Swollen veins in the rectum and anus
- **General Medical Conditions:**

- Edema: Swelling caused by fluid buildup
- Wound Healing: The process of tissue repair
- **Neurological Disorders:**
 - Cerebral Palsy: A group of disorders that affect movement and muscle tone
- **Hematological Disorders:**
 - Sickle Cell Anemia: A genetic blood disorder
 - Rickets: A bone disorder caused by vitamin D deficiency
- **Emergency Medicine:**
 - Cerebrovascular Accident (Stroke): Disruption of blood supply to the brain
- **Liver Diseases:**
 - Liver Cirrhosis: Scarring of the liver
- **Cardiovascular Diseases:**
 - Cardiomyopathy: Diseases of the heart muscle
- **Gastrointestinal Diseases:**
 - Crohn's Disease: A chronic inflammatory bowel disease
- **Respiratory Diseases:**
 - Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease (COPD): A lung disease that obstructs airflow
- **Metabolic Disorders:**
 - Diabetes Mellitus: A metabolic disorder characterized by high blood sugar levels
- **Target Audience**
 - Medical and nursing students
 - Healthcare professionals
 - Patients and their families
- **Unique Selling Points**
 - **Comprehensive Coverage:** A wide range of common medical conditions.
 - **Clear and Concise Explanations:** Easy-to-understand language and visual aids.
 - **Up-to-Date Information:** Current best practices and guidelines.
 - **Practical Approach:** Real-world clinical scenarios and case studies.

- **Engaging Content:** Interactive features and learning activities.

This book aims to be a valuable resource for healthcare professionals, students, and patients, providing a comprehensive understanding of a wide range of common medical conditions.

—Editor

Contents

<i>Preface</i>	<i>v</i>
1. Thrombophlebitis	1
<i>Dr. Amit Vyas</i>	
2. Scabies	24
<i>Dr. Amit Vyas</i>	
3. Cancer	46
<i>Dr. Amit Vyas</i>	
4. Autoimmune Disease	63
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
5. Hypersensitivity	82
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
6. Hernia	104
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
7. Hemorrhoids	119
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	
8. Edema	129
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	
9. Wound Healing	143
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	
10. Cerebral Palsy	158
<i>Mr. Hitesh Patidar</i>	
11. Sickle Cell Anemia	183
<i>Mr. Hitesh Patidar</i>	
12. Rickets	202
<i>Mr. Hitesh Patidar</i>	

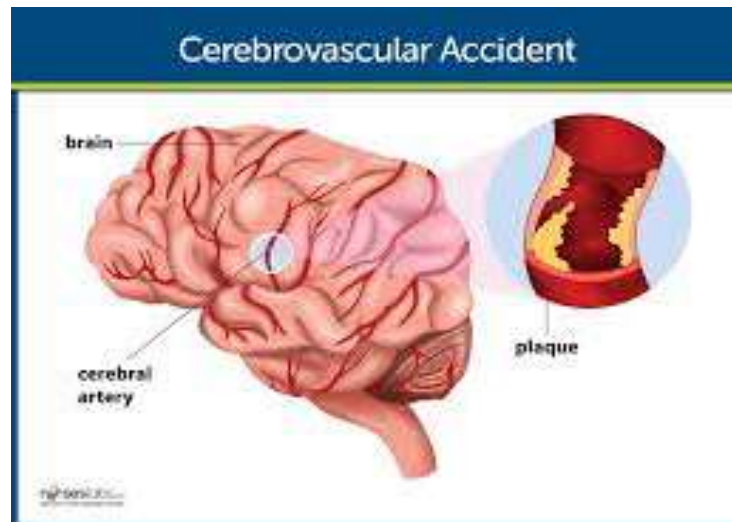
13. Emergency Nursing	216
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
14. Cerebrovascular Accident	234
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
15. Liver Cirrhosis	251
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
16. Cardiomyopathy	265
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
17. Crohn's Disease	285
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
18. Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease	301
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
19. Diabetes Mellitus	318
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
20. Common Neonatal Problems	330
<i>Ms. Vishva Patel</i>	
21. Patient Safety Indicators	340
<i>Ms. Megha Raval</i>	

Cerebrovascular Accident

Ms. Saloni Patel¹

1. DEFINITION

A cerebrovascular accident (CVA), commonly known as a stroke, occurs when there is a sudden disruption of blood flow to a part of the brain, leading to brain damage.



2. OBJECTIVE

The term "objective" in the context of cerebrovascular accidents (CVAs) typically refers to the goals or aims of

1. Nursing Tutor, AION

A Comprehensive Guide to Medical and Surgical Conditions

A Comprehensive Guide to Medical and Surgical Conditions

Editor

Dr. Amit Vyas

MARK PUBLISHERS
JAIPUR

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : A Comprehensive Guide to Medical and Surgical Conditions

Author : Dr. Amit Vyas

Edition : 2021

ISBN : 978-81-89472-35-1

Published by :

Mark Publishers

Jaipur-302 021

Exclusive Distributor

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,

Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,

Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by :

In-house

Preface

Overview

This comprehensive guide offers a detailed exploration of a wide range of common medical conditions, from acute illnesses to chronic diseases. It is designed to provide healthcare professionals, students, and patients with a thorough understanding of the pathophysiology, clinical manifestations, diagnosis, and management of these conditions.

Key Topics

- **Vascular Disorders:**
 - Thrombophlebitis: Inflammation of a vein with a blood clot
- **Skin Disorders:**
 - Scabies: A contagious skin infestation
- **Bone Disorders:**
 - Paget's Disease: A chronic bone disorder
- **Cancer:**
 - Malignant neoplasms and their treatment
- **Immune Disorders:**
 - Autoimmune diseases: Conditions where the immune system attacks the body's own tissues
 - Hypersensitivity reactions: Allergic and other immune responses
- **Gastrointestinal Disorders:**
 - Hernia: A protrusion of an organ or tissue through a weak spot in the muscle or connective tissue
 - Hemorrhoids: Swollen veins in the rectum and anus
- **General Medical Conditions:**

- Edema: Swelling caused by fluid buildup
- Wound Healing: The process of tissue repair
- **Neurological Disorders:**
 - Cerebral Palsy: A group of disorders that affect movement and muscle tone
- **Hematological Disorders:**
 - Sickle Cell Anemia: A genetic blood disorder
 - Rickets: A bone disorder caused by vitamin D deficiency
- **Emergency Medicine:**
 - Cerebrovascular Accident (Stroke): Disruption of blood supply to the brain
- **Liver Diseases:**
 - Liver Cirrhosis: Scarring of the liver
- **Cardiovascular Diseases:**
 - Cardiomyopathy: Diseases of the heart muscle
- **Gastrointestinal Diseases:**
 - Crohn's Disease: A chronic inflammatory bowel disease
- **Respiratory Diseases:**
 - Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease (COPD): A lung disease that obstructs airflow
- **Metabolic Disorders:**
 - Diabetes Mellitus: A metabolic disorder characterized by high blood sugar levels
- **Target Audience**
 - Medical and nursing students
 - Healthcare professionals
 - Patients and their families
- **Unique Selling Points**
 - **Comprehensive Coverage:** A wide range of common medical conditions.
 - **Clear and Concise Explanations:** Easy-to-understand language and visual aids.
 - **Up-to-Date Information:** Current best practices and guidelines.
 - **Practical Approach:** Real-world clinical scenarios and case studies.

- **Engaging Content:** Interactive features and learning activities.

This book aims to be a valuable resource for healthcare professionals, students, and patients, providing a comprehensive understanding of a wide range of common medical conditions.

—Editor

Contents

<i>Preface</i>	<i>v</i>
1. Thrombophlebitis	1
<i>Dr. Amit Vyas</i>	
2. Scabies	24
<i>Dr. Amit Vyas</i>	
3. Cancer	46
<i>Dr. Amit Vyas</i>	
4. Autoimmune Disease	63
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
5. Hypersensitivity	82
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
6. Hernia	104
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
7. Hemorrhoids	119
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	
8. Edema	129
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	
9. Wound Healing	143
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	
10. Cerebral Palsy	158
<i>Mr. Hitesh Patidar</i>	
11. Sickle Cell Anemia	183
<i>Mr. Hitesh Patidar</i>	
12. Rickets	202
<i>Mr. Hitesh Patidar</i>	

13. Emergency Nursing	216
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
14. Cerebrovascular Accident	234
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
15. Liver Cirrhosis	251
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
16. Cardiomyopathy	265
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
17. Crohn's Disease	285
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
18. Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease	301
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
19. Diabetes Mellitus	318
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
20. Common Neonatal Problems	330
<i>Ms. Vishva Patel</i>	
21. Patient Safety Indicators	340
<i>Ms. Megha Raval</i>	

1. DEFINITION

Liver cirrhosis is a disease characterized by the presence of diffuse and chronic inflammation of the liver, followed by the proliferation connective tissue, degeneration and regeneration of liver cells, so that riot in the composition of the liver parenchyma.

2. OBJECTIVE

1. Prevent Disease Progression: Halt or slow down the progression of cirrhosis through medical treatments, lifestyle changes, and addressing underlying causes.
2. Manage Symptoms: Alleviate symptoms associated with cirrhosis, such as fatigue, itching, and jaundice, to improve quality of life.
3. Treat Complications: Address and manage complications that arise from cirrhosis, such as ascites (fluid buildup), hepatic encephalopathy (brain dysfunction), and variceal bleeding (bleeding from dilated veins in the esophagus or stomach).
4. Improve Liver Function: Support and improve liver function where possible, through medications, diet modifications, and sometimes surgical interventions.
5. Prevent Liver Failure: Reduce the risk of liver failure by managing the disease effectively and addressing any contributing factors.

1. Nursing Tutor, AION

A Comprehensive Guide to Medical and Surgical Conditions

A Comprehensive Guide to Medical and Surgical Conditions

Editor

Dr. Amit Vyas

MARK PUBLISHERS
JAIPUR

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : A Comprehensive Guide to Medical and Surgical Conditions

Author : Dr. Amit Vyas

Edition : 2021

ISBN : 978-81-89472-35-1

Published by :

Mark Publishers

Jaipur-302 021

Exclusive Distributor

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,

Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,

Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by :

In-house

Preface

Overview

This comprehensive guide offers a detailed exploration of a wide range of common medical conditions, from acute illnesses to chronic diseases. It is designed to provide healthcare professionals, students, and patients with a thorough understanding of the pathophysiology, clinical manifestations, diagnosis, and management of these conditions.

Key Topics

- **Vascular Disorders:**
 - Thrombophlebitis: Inflammation of a vein with a blood clot
- **Skin Disorders:**
 - Scabies: A contagious skin infestation
- **Bone Disorders:**
 - Paget's Disease: A chronic bone disorder
- **Cancer:**
 - Malignant neoplasms and their treatment
- **Immune Disorders:**
 - Autoimmune diseases: Conditions where the immune system attacks the body's own tissues
 - Hypersensitivity reactions: Allergic and other immune responses
- **Gastrointestinal Disorders:**
 - Hernia: A protrusion of an organ or tissue through a weak spot in the muscle or connective tissue
 - Hemorrhoids: Swollen veins in the rectum and anus
- **General Medical Conditions:**

- Edema: Swelling caused by fluid buildup
- Wound Healing: The process of tissue repair
- **Neurological Disorders:**
 - Cerebral Palsy: A group of disorders that affect movement and muscle tone
- **Hematological Disorders:**
 - Sickle Cell Anemia: A genetic blood disorder
 - Rickets: A bone disorder caused by vitamin D deficiency
- **Emergency Medicine:**
 - Cerebrovascular Accident (Stroke): Disruption of blood supply to the brain
- **Liver Diseases:**
 - Liver Cirrhosis: Scarring of the liver
- **Cardiovascular Diseases:**
 - Cardiomyopathy: Diseases of the heart muscle
- **Gastrointestinal Diseases:**
 - Crohn's Disease: A chronic inflammatory bowel disease
- **Respiratory Diseases:**
 - Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease (COPD): A lung disease that obstructs airflow
- **Metabolic Disorders:**
 - Diabetes Mellitus: A metabolic disorder characterized by high blood sugar levels
- **Target Audience**
 - Medical and nursing students
 - Healthcare professionals
 - Patients and their families
- **Unique Selling Points**
 - **Comprehensive Coverage:** A wide range of common medical conditions.
 - **Clear and Concise Explanations:** Easy-to-understand language and visual aids.
 - **Up-to-Date Information:** Current best practices and guidelines.
 - **Practical Approach:** Real-world clinical scenarios and case studies.

- **Engaging Content:** Interactive features and learning activities.

This book aims to be a valuable resource for healthcare professionals, students, and patients, providing a comprehensive understanding of a wide range of common medical conditions.

—Editor

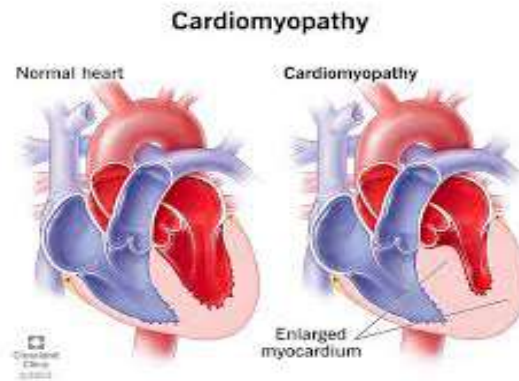
Contents

<i>Preface</i>	<i>v</i>
1. Thrombophlebitis	1
<i>Dr. Amit Vyas</i>	
2. Scabies	24
<i>Dr. Amit Vyas</i>	
3. Cancer	46
<i>Dr. Amit Vyas</i>	
4. Autoimmune Disease	63
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
5. Hypersensitivity	82
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
6. Hernia	104
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
7. Hemorrhoids	119
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	
8. Edema	129
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	
9. Wound Healing	143
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	
10. Cerebral Palsy	158
<i>Mr. Hitesh Patidar</i>	
11. Sickle Cell Anemia	183
<i>Mr. Hitesh Patidar</i>	
12. Rickets	202
<i>Mr. Hitesh Patidar</i>	

13. Emergency Nursing	216
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
14. Cerebrovascular Accident	234
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
15. Liver Cirrhosis	251
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
16. Cardiomyopathy	265
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
17. Crohn's Disease	285
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
18. Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease	301
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
19. Diabetes Mellitus	318
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
20. Common Neonatal Problems	330
<i>Ms. Vishva Patel</i>	
21. Patient Safety Indicators	340
<i>Ms. Megha Raval</i>	

1. DEFINITION

Cardiomyopathy is a term used to describe a group of diseases that affect the heart muscle (myocardium). These diseases lead to changes in the heart's structure and function, which can impair its ability to pump blood effectively. Cardiomyopathy can result in heart failure, arrhythmias (irregular heartbeats), and other complications.

**2. OBJECTIVE**

The objectives of managing cardiomyopathy focus on improving heart function, alleviating symptoms, and preventing compli-

1. Nursing Tutor, AION

A Comprehensive Guide to Medical and Surgical Conditions

A Comprehensive Guide to Medical and Surgical Conditions

Editor

Dr. Amit Vyas

MARK PUBLISHERS
JAIPUR

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : A Comprehensive Guide to Medical and Surgical Conditions

Author : Dr. Amit Vyas

Edition : 2021

ISBN : 978-81-89472-35-1

Published by :

Mark Publishers

Jaipur-302 021

Exclusive Distributor

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,

Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,

Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by :

In-house

Preface

Overview

This comprehensive guide offers a detailed exploration of a wide range of common medical conditions, from acute illnesses to chronic diseases. It is designed to provide healthcare professionals, students, and patients with a thorough understanding of the pathophysiology, clinical manifestations, diagnosis, and management of these conditions.

Key Topics

- **Vascular Disorders:**
 - Thrombophlebitis: Inflammation of a vein with a blood clot
- **Skin Disorders:**
 - Scabies: A contagious skin infestation
- **Bone Disorders:**
 - Paget's Disease: A chronic bone disorder
- **Cancer:**
 - Malignant neoplasms and their treatment
- **Immune Disorders:**
 - Autoimmune diseases: Conditions where the immune system attacks the body's own tissues
 - Hypersensitivity reactions: Allergic and other immune responses
- **Gastrointestinal Disorders:**
 - Hernia: A protrusion of an organ or tissue through a weak spot in the muscle or connective tissue
 - Hemorrhoids: Swollen veins in the rectum and anus
- **General Medical Conditions:**

- Edema: Swelling caused by fluid buildup
- Wound Healing: The process of tissue repair
- **Neurological Disorders:**
 - Cerebral Palsy: A group of disorders that affect movement and muscle tone
- **Hematological Disorders:**
 - Sickle Cell Anemia: A genetic blood disorder
 - Rickets: A bone disorder caused by vitamin D deficiency
- **Emergency Medicine:**
 - Cerebrovascular Accident (Stroke): Disruption of blood supply to the brain
- **Liver Diseases:**
 - Liver Cirrhosis: Scarring of the liver
- **Cardiovascular Diseases:**
 - Cardiomyopathy: Diseases of the heart muscle
- **Gastrointestinal Diseases:**
 - Crohn's Disease: A chronic inflammatory bowel disease
- **Respiratory Diseases:**
 - Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease (COPD): A lung disease that obstructs airflow
- **Metabolic Disorders:**
 - Diabetes Mellitus: A metabolic disorder characterized by high blood sugar levels
- **Target Audience**
 - Medical and nursing students
 - Healthcare professionals
 - Patients and their families
- **Unique Selling Points**
 - **Comprehensive Coverage:** A wide range of common medical conditions.
 - **Clear and Concise Explanations:** Easy-to-understand language and visual aids.
 - **Up-to-Date Information:** Current best practices and guidelines.
 - **Practical Approach:** Real-world clinical scenarios and case studies.

- **Engaging Content:** Interactive features and learning activities.

This book aims to be a valuable resource for healthcare professionals, students, and patients, providing a comprehensive understanding of a wide range of common medical conditions.

—Editor

Contents

<i>Preface</i>	<i>v</i>
1. Thrombophlebitis	1
<i>Dr. Amit Vyas</i>	
2. Scabies	24
<i>Dr. Amit Vyas</i>	
3. Cancer	46
<i>Dr. Amit Vyas</i>	
4. Autoimmune Disease	63
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
5. Hypersensitivity	82
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
6. Hernia	104
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
7. Hemorrhoids	119
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	
8. Edema	129
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	
9. Wound Healing	143
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	
10. Cerebral Palsy	158
<i>Mr. Hitesh Patidar</i>	
11. Sickle Cell Anemia	183
<i>Mr. Hitesh Patidar</i>	
12. Rickets	202
<i>Mr. Hitesh Patidar</i>	

13. Emergency Nursing	216
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
14. Cerebrovascular Accident	234
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
15. Liver Cirrhosis	251
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
16. Cardiomyopathy	265
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
17. Crohn's Disease	285
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
18. Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease	301
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
19. Diabetes Mellitus	318
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
20. Common Neonatal Problems	330
<i>Ms. Vishva Patel</i>	
21. Patient Safety Indicators	340
<i>Ms. Megha Raval</i>	

1. DEFINITION

Crohn's Disease is a type of inflammatory bowel disease (IBD) characterized by chronic inflammation of the gastrointestinal (GI) tract. It can affect any part of the GI tract from the mouth to the anus but most commonly impacts the ileum (the last part of the small intestine) and the colon (the large intestine).

2. OBJECTIVE

The objectives of managing Crohn's disease aim to control inflammation, alleviate symptoms, and improve the patient's overall quality of life. Here's a comprehensive look at the primary goals:

1. Control Inflammation

- Objective: Reduce and manage inflammation in the gastrointestinal tract to minimize symptoms and prevent disease progression.
- Strategies: Use of anti-inflammatory medications such as corticosteroids, aminosalicylates, and immunosuppressants.

2. Alleviate Symptoms

- Objective: Relieve symptoms such as abdominal pain, diarrhea, and fatigue to improve the patient's comfort and daily functioning.

1. Nursing Tutor, AION

A Comprehensive Guide to Medical and Surgical Conditions

A Comprehensive Guide to Medical and Surgical Conditions

Editor

Dr. Amit Vyas

MARK PUBLISHERS
JAIPUR

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : A Comprehensive Guide to Medical and Surgical Conditions

Author : Dr. Amit Vyas

Edition : 2021

ISBN : 978-81-89472-35-1

Published by :

Mark Publishers

Jaipur-302 021

Exclusive Distributor

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,

Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,

Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by :

In-house

Preface

Overview

This comprehensive guide offers a detailed exploration of a wide range of common medical conditions, from acute illnesses to chronic diseases. It is designed to provide healthcare professionals, students, and patients with a thorough understanding of the pathophysiology, clinical manifestations, diagnosis, and management of these conditions.

Key Topics

- **Vascular Disorders:**
 - Thrombophlebitis: Inflammation of a vein with a blood clot
- **Skin Disorders:**
 - Scabies: A contagious skin infestation
- **Bone Disorders:**
 - Paget's Disease: A chronic bone disorder
- **Cancer:**
 - Malignant neoplasms and their treatment
- **Immune Disorders:**
 - Autoimmune diseases: Conditions where the immune system attacks the body's own tissues
 - Hypersensitivity reactions: Allergic and other immune responses
- **Gastrointestinal Disorders:**
 - Hernia: A protrusion of an organ or tissue through a weak spot in the muscle or connective tissue
 - Hemorrhoids: Swollen veins in the rectum and anus
- **General Medical Conditions:**

- Edema: Swelling caused by fluid buildup
- Wound Healing: The process of tissue repair
- **Neurological Disorders:**
 - Cerebral Palsy: A group of disorders that affect movement and muscle tone
- **Hematological Disorders:**
 - Sickle Cell Anemia: A genetic blood disorder
 - Rickets: A bone disorder caused by vitamin D deficiency
- **Emergency Medicine:**
 - Cerebrovascular Accident (Stroke): Disruption of blood supply to the brain
- **Liver Diseases:**
 - Liver Cirrhosis: Scarring of the liver
- **Cardiovascular Diseases:**
 - Cardiomyopathy: Diseases of the heart muscle
- **Gastrointestinal Diseases:**
 - Crohn's Disease: A chronic inflammatory bowel disease
- **Respiratory Diseases:**
 - Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease (COPD): A lung disease that obstructs airflow
- **Metabolic Disorders:**
 - Diabetes Mellitus: A metabolic disorder characterized by high blood sugar levels
- **Target Audience**
 - Medical and nursing students
 - Healthcare professionals
 - Patients and their families
- **Unique Selling Points**
 - **Comprehensive Coverage:** A wide range of common medical conditions.
 - **Clear and Concise Explanations:** Easy-to-understand language and visual aids.
 - **Up-to-Date Information:** Current best practices and guidelines.
 - **Practical Approach:** Real-world clinical scenarios and case studies.

- **Engaging Content:** Interactive features and learning activities.

This book aims to be a valuable resource for healthcare professionals, students, and patients, providing a comprehensive understanding of a wide range of common medical conditions.

—Editor

Contents

<i>Preface</i>	<i>v</i>
1. Thrombophlebitis	1
<i>Dr. Amit Vyas</i>	
2. Scabies	24
<i>Dr. Amit Vyas</i>	
3. Cancer	46
<i>Dr. Amit Vyas</i>	
4. Autoimmune Disease	63
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
5. Hypersensitivity	82
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
6. Hernia	104
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
7. Hemorrhoids	119
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	
8. Edema	129
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	
9. Wound Healing	143
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	
10. Cerebral Palsy	158
<i>Mr. Hitesh Patidar</i>	
11. Sickle Cell Anemia	183
<i>Mr. Hitesh Patidar</i>	
12. Rickets	202
<i>Mr. Hitesh Patidar</i>	

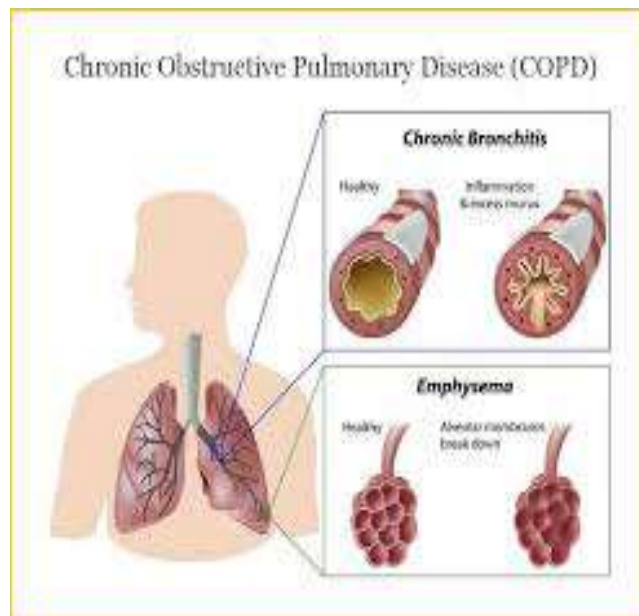
13. Emergency Nursing	216
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
14. Cerebrovascular Accident	234
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
15. Liver Cirrhosis	251
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
16. Cardiomyopathy	265
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
17. Crohn's Disease	285
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
18. Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease	301
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
19. Diabetes Mellitus	318
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
20. Common Neonatal Problems	330
<i>Ms. Vishva Patel</i>	
21. Patient Safety Indicators	340
<i>Ms. Megha Raval</i>	

Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease

Ms. Jacinta Vasava¹

1. DEFINITION

Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease (COPD) is a progressive lung disease characterized by persistent and typically worsening airflow limitation that is not fully reversible.



¹ Nursing Tutor, AION

A Comprehensive Guide to Medical and Surgical Conditions

A Comprehensive Guide to Medical and Surgical Conditions

Editor

Dr. Amit Vyas

MARK PUBLISHERS
JAIPUR

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : A Comprehensive Guide to Medical and Surgical Conditions

Author : Dr. Amit Vyas

Edition : 2021

ISBN : 978-81-89472-35-1

Published by :

Mark Publishers

Jaipur-302 021

Exclusive Distributor

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,

Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,

Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by :

In-house

Preface

Overview

This comprehensive guide offers a detailed exploration of a wide range of common medical conditions, from acute illnesses to chronic diseases. It is designed to provide healthcare professionals, students, and patients with a thorough understanding of the pathophysiology, clinical manifestations, diagnosis, and management of these conditions.

Key Topics

- **Vascular Disorders:**
 - Thrombophlebitis: Inflammation of a vein with a blood clot
- **Skin Disorders:**
 - Scabies: A contagious skin infestation
- **Bone Disorders:**
 - Paget's Disease: A chronic bone disorder
- **Cancer:**
 - Malignant neoplasms and their treatment
- **Immune Disorders:**
 - Autoimmune diseases: Conditions where the immune system attacks the body's own tissues
 - Hypersensitivity reactions: Allergic and other immune responses
- **Gastrointestinal Disorders:**
 - Hernia: A protrusion of an organ or tissue through a weak spot in the muscle or connective tissue
 - Hemorrhoids: Swollen veins in the rectum and anus
- **General Medical Conditions:**

- Edema: Swelling caused by fluid buildup
- Wound Healing: The process of tissue repair
- **Neurological Disorders:**
 - Cerebral Palsy: A group of disorders that affect movement and muscle tone
- **Hematological Disorders:**
 - Sickle Cell Anemia: A genetic blood disorder
 - Rickets: A bone disorder caused by vitamin D deficiency
- **Emergency Medicine:**
 - Cerebrovascular Accident (Stroke): Disruption of blood supply to the brain
- **Liver Diseases:**
 - Liver Cirrhosis: Scarring of the liver
- **Cardiovascular Diseases:**
 - Cardiomyopathy: Diseases of the heart muscle
- **Gastrointestinal Diseases:**
 - Crohn's Disease: A chronic inflammatory bowel disease
- **Respiratory Diseases:**
 - Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease (COPD): A lung disease that obstructs airflow
- **Metabolic Disorders:**
 - Diabetes Mellitus: A metabolic disorder characterized by high blood sugar levels
- **Target Audience**
 - Medical and nursing students
 - Healthcare professionals
 - Patients and their families
- **Unique Selling Points**
 - **Comprehensive Coverage:** A wide range of common medical conditions.
 - **Clear and Concise Explanations:** Easy-to-understand language and visual aids.
 - **Up-to-Date Information:** Current best practices and guidelines.
 - **Practical Approach:** Real-world clinical scenarios and case studies.

- **Engaging Content:** Interactive features and learning activities.

This book aims to be a valuable resource for healthcare professionals, students, and patients, providing a comprehensive understanding of a wide range of common medical conditions.

—Editor

Contents

<i>Preface</i>	<i>v</i>
1. Thrombophlebitis	1
<i>Dr. Amit Vyas</i>	
2. Scabies	24
<i>Dr. Amit Vyas</i>	
3. Cancer	46
<i>Dr. Amit Vyas</i>	
4. Autoimmune Disease	63
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
5. Hypersensitivity	82
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
6. Hernia	104
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
7. Hemorrhoids	119
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	
8. Edema	129
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	
9. Wound Healing	143
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	
10. Cerebral Palsy	158
<i>Mr. Hitesh Patidar</i>	
11. Sickle Cell Anemia	183
<i>Mr. Hitesh Patidar</i>	
12. Rickets	202
<i>Mr. Hitesh Patidar</i>	

13. Emergency Nursing	216
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
14. Cerebrovascular Accident	234
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
15. Liver Cirrhosis	251
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
16. Cardiomyopathy	265
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
17. Crohn's Disease	285
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
18. Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease	301
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
19. Diabetes Mellitus	318
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
20. Common Neonatal Problems	330
<i>Ms. Vishva Patel</i>	
21. Patient Safety Indicators	340
<i>Ms. Megha Raval</i>	

1. DEFINITION

Diabetes mellitus, a DM also known in Indonesia as diabetes is a metabolic disorder caused by many factors, with a symptom of chronic hyperglycemia and carbohydrate metabolism, fat and protein disorders, as a result of: deficiency of insulin hormone secretion, insulin activity and deficiency glucose transporter.

2. OBJECTIVE

The primary objective in managing diabetes mellitus is to maintain blood glucose levels within a target range to prevent or minimize the risk of complications. This involves several key goals:

1. Blood Glucose Control: Achieving and maintaining blood sugar levels within a target range to reduce the risk of both short-term and long-term complications. This includes monitoring fasting blood glucose, postprandial glucose (after meals), and HbA1c levels.

2. Preventing Complications: Minimizing the risk of diabetes-related complications, such as cardiovascular disease, neuropathy, nephropathy, retinopathy, and foot problems. This involves regular screenings and managing risk factors like hypertension and high cholesterol.

3. Optimizing Overall Health: Addressing other aspects of health affected by diabetes, such as maintaining a healthy weight, managing stress, and ensuring proper nutrition and physical activity.

1. Nursing Tutor, AIONAs

A Comprehensive Guide to Medical and Surgical Conditions

A Comprehensive Guide to Medical and Surgical Conditions

Editor

Dr. Amit Vyas

MARK PUBLISHERS
JAIPUR

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : A Comprehensive Guide to Medical and Surgical Conditions

Author : Dr. Amit Vyas

Edition : 2021

ISBN : 978-81-89472-35-1

Published by :

Mark Publishers

Jaipur-302 021

Exclusive Distributor

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,

Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,

Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by :

In-house

Preface

Overview

This comprehensive guide offers a detailed exploration of a wide range of common medical conditions, from acute illnesses to chronic diseases. It is designed to provide healthcare professionals, students, and patients with a thorough understanding of the pathophysiology, clinical manifestations, diagnosis, and management of these conditions.

Key Topics

- **Vascular Disorders:**
 - Thrombophlebitis: Inflammation of a vein with a blood clot
- **Skin Disorders:**
 - Scabies: A contagious skin infestation
- **Bone Disorders:**
 - Paget's Disease: A chronic bone disorder
- **Cancer:**
 - Malignant neoplasms and their treatment
- **Immune Disorders:**
 - Autoimmune diseases: Conditions where the immune system attacks the body's own tissues
 - Hypersensitivity reactions: Allergic and other immune responses
- **Gastrointestinal Disorders:**
 - Hernia: A protrusion of an organ or tissue through a weak spot in the muscle or connective tissue
 - Hemorrhoids: Swollen veins in the rectum and anus
- **General Medical Conditions:**

- Edema: Swelling caused by fluid buildup
- Wound Healing: The process of tissue repair
- **Neurological Disorders:**
 - Cerebral Palsy: A group of disorders that affect movement and muscle tone
- **Hematological Disorders:**
 - Sickle Cell Anemia: A genetic blood disorder
 - Rickets: A bone disorder caused by vitamin D deficiency
- **Emergency Medicine:**
 - Cerebrovascular Accident (Stroke): Disruption of blood supply to the brain
- **Liver Diseases:**
 - Liver Cirrhosis: Scarring of the liver
- **Cardiovascular Diseases:**
 - Cardiomyopathy: Diseases of the heart muscle
- **Gastrointestinal Diseases:**
 - Crohn's Disease: A chronic inflammatory bowel disease
- **Respiratory Diseases:**
 - Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease (COPD): A lung disease that obstructs airflow
- **Metabolic Disorders:**
 - Diabetes Mellitus: A metabolic disorder characterized by high blood sugar levels
- **Target Audience**
 - Medical and nursing students
 - Healthcare professionals
 - Patients and their families
- **Unique Selling Points**
 - **Comprehensive Coverage:** A wide range of common medical conditions.
 - **Clear and Concise Explanations:** Easy-to-understand language and visual aids.
 - **Up-to-Date Information:** Current best practices and guidelines.
 - **Practical Approach:** Real-world clinical scenarios and case studies.

- **Engaging Content:** Interactive features and learning activities.

This book aims to be a valuable resource for healthcare professionals, students, and patients, providing a comprehensive understanding of a wide range of common medical conditions.

—Editor

Contents

<i>Preface</i>	<i>v</i>
1. Thrombophlebitis	1
<i>Dr. Amit Vyas</i>	
2. Scabies	24
<i>Dr. Amit Vyas</i>	
3. Cancer	46
<i>Dr. Amit Vyas</i>	
4. Autoimmune Disease	63
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
5. Hypersensitivity	82
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
6. Hernia	104
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
7. Hemorrhoids	119
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	
8. Edema	129
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	
9. Wound Healing	143
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	
10. Cerebral Palsy	158
<i>Mr. Hitesh Patidar</i>	
11. Sickle Cell Anemia	183
<i>Mr. Hitesh Patidar</i>	
12. Rickets	202
<i>Mr. Hitesh Patidar</i>	

13. Emergency Nursing	216
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
14. Cerebrovascular Accident	234
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
15. Liver Cirrhosis	251
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
16. Cardiomyopathy	265
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
17. Crohn's Disease	285
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
18. Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease	301
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
19. Diabetes Mellitus	318
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
20. Common Neonatal Problems	330
<i>Ms. Vishva Patel</i>	
21. Patient Safety Indicators	340
<i>Ms. Megha Raval</i>	

■ INTRODUCTION: -

Majority of newborn babies do not develop any serious disorders and they need routine newborn care which can be provided by the mothers under nurse's supervision. High risk mothers are likely to give birth to preterm or low birth weight babies who are prone to suffer from a number of disorders. Common causes of morbidity in newborn babies include hypoglycemia, shock, RDS, jaundice, neonatal sepsis, and neonatal seizures. Most neonatal disorders are limited to preterm and low birth weight babies. In this unit, common neonatal disorders such as hypoglycemia, RDS, shock, jaundice, neonatal sepsis, neonatal seizures and monitoring of sick neonate are being discussed. Hence you will learn about the definition, causes, pathogenesis, types, signs and symptoms, diagnosis and management of these disorders. You will also learn about how to monitor a sick neonate.

HYPOGLYCEMIA

Definition:- Hypoglycemia is defined as a blood glucose level of less than 45 mg/dl in all newborns. Low birth weight and sick neonates are prone to develop low blood sugar which increases morbidity and mortality. It is important to monitor, diagnose and treat hypoglycemia early for a favorable outcome.

Neonates at Risk:-

1. Nursing Tutor, AION

A Comprehensive Guide to Medical and Surgical Conditions

A Comprehensive Guide to Medical and Surgical Conditions

Editor

Dr. Amit Vyas

MARK PUBLISHERS
JAIPUR

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : A Comprehensive Guide to Medical and Surgical Conditions

Author : Dr. Amit Vyas

Edition : 2021

ISBN : 978-81-89472-35-1

Published by :

Mark Publishers

Jaipur-302 021

Exclusive Distributor

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,

Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,

Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by :

In-house

Preface

Overview

This comprehensive guide offers a detailed exploration of a wide range of common medical conditions, from acute illnesses to chronic diseases. It is designed to provide healthcare professionals, students, and patients with a thorough understanding of the pathophysiology, clinical manifestations, diagnosis, and management of these conditions.

Key Topics

- **Vascular Disorders:**
 - Thrombophlebitis: Inflammation of a vein with a blood clot
- **Skin Disorders:**
 - Scabies: A contagious skin infestation
- **Bone Disorders:**
 - Paget's Disease: A chronic bone disorder
- **Cancer:**
 - Malignant neoplasms and their treatment
- **Immune Disorders:**
 - Autoimmune diseases: Conditions where the immune system attacks the body's own tissues
 - Hypersensitivity reactions: Allergic and other immune responses
- **Gastrointestinal Disorders:**
 - Hernia: A protrusion of an organ or tissue through a weak spot in the muscle or connective tissue
 - Hemorrhoids: Swollen veins in the rectum and anus
- **General Medical Conditions:**

- Edema: Swelling caused by fluid buildup
- Wound Healing: The process of tissue repair
- **Neurological Disorders:**
 - Cerebral Palsy: A group of disorders that affect movement and muscle tone
- **Hematological Disorders:**
 - Sickle Cell Anemia: A genetic blood disorder
 - Rickets: A bone disorder caused by vitamin D deficiency
- **Emergency Medicine:**
 - Cerebrovascular Accident (Stroke): Disruption of blood supply to the brain
- **Liver Diseases:**
 - Liver Cirrhosis: Scarring of the liver
- **Cardiovascular Diseases:**
 - Cardiomyopathy: Diseases of the heart muscle
- **Gastrointestinal Diseases:**
 - Crohn's Disease: A chronic inflammatory bowel disease
- **Respiratory Diseases:**
 - Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease (COPD): A lung disease that obstructs airflow
- **Metabolic Disorders:**
 - Diabetes Mellitus: A metabolic disorder characterized by high blood sugar levels
- **Target Audience**
 - Medical and nursing students
 - Healthcare professionals
 - Patients and their families
- **Unique Selling Points**
 - **Comprehensive Coverage:** A wide range of common medical conditions.
 - **Clear and Concise Explanations:** Easy-to-understand language and visual aids.
 - **Up-to-Date Information:** Current best practices and guidelines.
 - **Practical Approach:** Real-world clinical scenarios and case studies.

- **Engaging Content:** Interactive features and learning activities.

This book aims to be a valuable resource for healthcare professionals, students, and patients, providing a comprehensive understanding of a wide range of common medical conditions.

—Editor

Contents

<i>Preface</i>	<i>v</i>
1. Thrombophlebitis	1
<i>Dr. Amit Vyas</i>	
2. Scabies	24
<i>Dr. Amit Vyas</i>	
3. Cancer	46
<i>Dr. Amit Vyas</i>	
4. Autoimmune Disease	63
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
5. Hypersensitivity	82
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
6. Hernia	104
<i>Ms. Sejal Patel</i>	
7. Hemorrhoids	119
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	
8. Edema	129
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	
9. Wound Healing	143
<i>Ms. Pinal Ghoghara</i>	
10. Cerebral Palsy	158
<i>Mr. Hitesh Patidar</i>	
11. Sickle Cell Anemia	183
<i>Mr. Hitesh Patidar</i>	
12. Rickets	202
<i>Mr. Hitesh Patidar</i>	

13. Emergency Nursing	216
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
14. Cerebrovascular Accident	234
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
15. Liver Cirrhosis	251
<i>Ms. Saloni Patel</i>	
16. Cardiomyopathy	265
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
17. Crohn's Disease	285
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
18. Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease	301
<i>Ms. Jacinta Vasava</i>	
19. Diabetes Mellitus	318
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
20. Common Neonatal Problems	330
<i>Ms. Vishva Patel</i>	
21. Patient Safety Indicators	340
<i>Ms. Megha Raval</i>	

**□ Vulnerable patients:-**

A patient who is or may be for any reason unable to protect and take care of him or herself. Such patients are prone to various risks within the hospital, such as fall, injury, neglect, abuse, medical errors and acquiring of infections. Vulnerable patient requires special care.

□ List of vulnerable category:-

- Elderly above 65 years.
- Children are below 12 years.

1. Nursing Tutor, AION

Public Health Challenges: A Comprehensive Guides

Public Health Challenges: A Comprehensive Guides

Editor

Prof. Pinal Ghoghara

MARK PUBLISHERS
DELHI

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Public Health Challenges:
A Comprehensive Guides

Author : Prof. Pinal Ghoghara

Edition : 2021

ISBN : 978-81-89472-36-8

Published by :

Mark Publishers
Jaipur

Exclusive Distributor

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,
Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,
Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032
E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by :

In-house

Preface

Overview

This comprehensive book delves into a range of pressing public health issues, examining their epidemiology, prevention, control, and treatment strategies. It explores the complexities of infectious diseases, chronic illnesses, and nutritional deficiencies, as well as the national programs implemented to address these challenges.

Key Topics

- **Infectious Diseases:**
 - Tuberculosis: A persistent global health threat
 - HIV/AIDS: A complex pandemic
 - Vector-borne diseases: Malaria, dengue fever, and more
- **Chronic Diseases:**
 - Cancer, diabetes, cardiovascular diseases, and stroke: A growing burden
- **Nutritional Deficiencies:**
 - Iodine deficiency disorders: A silent epidemic
 - Anemia: A widespread health problem
- **Mental Health:**
 - Mental health disorders: A global concern
 - National Mental Health Programme: Addressing mental health needs in India
- **Public Health Programs and Policies:**
 - National Tuberculosis Control Programme
 - National AIDS Control Programme
 - National Vector Borne Disease Control Programme
 - National Iodine Deficiency Disorders Control Programme
 - National Nutritional Anaemia Control Programme
 - National Programme for Prevention and Control of Cancer, Diabetes, Cardiovascular Diseases and Stroke

Target Audience

- Public health professionals
- Healthcare providers
- Medical students
- Policymakers
- Health advocates
- General public

Unique Selling Points

- **Comprehensive Coverage:** A wide range of public health challenges.
- **In-depth Analysis:** Detailed exploration of each topic.
- **Evidence-Based Approach:** Drawing on the latest research and guidelines.
- **Practical Strategies:** Real-world solutions and interventions.
- **Indian Context:** Focus on India's public health landscape.

Potential Chapters

1. Introduction to Public Health
2. Tuberculosis: A Persistent Global Threat
3. HIV/AIDS: A Complex Pandemic
4. Vector-Borne Diseases: A Growing Challenge
5. Chronic Diseases: A Silent Epidemic
6. Nutritional Deficiencies: A Global Health Issue
7. Mental Health: A Neglected Crisis
8. National Health Programs in India: An Overview
9. Communicable Disease Control and Prevention
10. Non-Communicable Disease Control and Prevention

This book aims to be a valuable resource for healthcare professionals, policymakers, and the general public, providing a comprehensive understanding of the major public health challenges facing our society.

— Editor

Contents

Preface	v
1. Tuberculosis	1
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
2. Communicable Disease Awareness	11
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
3. HIV AIDs	21
<i>Mr. Pankaj Kumawat</i>	
4. National Nutritional Anaemia Control Programme in India	40
<i>Mr. Pankaj Kumawat</i>	
5. National Mental Health Programme	47
<i>Mr. Pankaj Kumawat</i>	
6. National Programme for Prevention and Control of Cancer, Diabetes, Cardiovascular Diseases and Stroke	55
<i>Mr. Pankaj Kumawat</i>	
7. National Vector Borne Disease Control Programm	65
<i>Mr. Chirag Trivedi</i>	
8. National Iodine Deficiency Disorders Control Programme (NIDDCP)	73
<i>Mr. Chirag Trivedi</i>	
9. Revised National Tuberculosis Control Programme	80
<i>Mr. Chirag Trivedi</i>	
10. MCH Services	86
<i>Ms. Arti Dave</i>	

Public Health Challenges: A Comprehensive Guides

Public Health Challenges: A Comprehensive Guides

Editor

Prof. Pinal Ghoghara

MARK PUBLISHERS
DELHI

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Public Health Challenges:
A Comprehensive Guides

Author : Prof. Pinal Ghoghara

Edition : 2021

ISBN : 978-81-89472-36-8

Published by :

Mark Publishers
Jaipur

Exclusive Distributor

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,
Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,
Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032
E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by :

In-house

Preface

Overview

This comprehensive book delves into a range of pressing public health issues, examining their epidemiology, prevention, control, and treatment strategies. It explores the complexities of infectious diseases, chronic illnesses, and nutritional deficiencies, as well as the national programs implemented to address these challenges.

Key Topics

- **Infectious Diseases:**
 - Tuberculosis: A persistent global health threat
 - HIV/AIDS: A complex pandemic
 - Vector-borne diseases: Malaria, dengue fever, and more
- **Chronic Diseases:**
 - Cancer, diabetes, cardiovascular diseases, and stroke: A growing burden
- **Nutritional Deficiencies:**
 - Iodine deficiency disorders: A silent epidemic
 - Anemia: A widespread health problem
- **Mental Health:**
 - Mental health disorders: A global concern
 - National Mental Health Programme: Addressing mental health needs in India
- **Public Health Programs and Policies:**
 - National Tuberculosis Control Programme
 - National AIDS Control Programme
 - National Vector Borne Disease Control Programme
 - National Iodine Deficiency Disorders Control Programme
 - National Nutritional Anaemia Control Programme
 - National Programme for Prevention and Control of Cancer, Diabetes, Cardiovascular Diseases and Stroke

Target Audience

- Public health professionals
- Healthcare providers
- Medical students
- Policymakers
- Health advocates
- General public

Unique Selling Points

- **Comprehensive Coverage:** A wide range of public health challenges.
- **In-depth Analysis:** Detailed exploration of each topic.
- **Evidence-Based Approach:** Drawing on the latest research and guidelines.
- **Practical Strategies:** Real-world solutions and interventions.
- **Indian Context:** Focus on India's public health landscape.

Potential Chapters

1. Introduction to Public Health
2. Tuberculosis: A Persistent Global Threat
3. HIV/AIDS: A Complex Pandemic
4. Vector-Borne Diseases: A Growing Challenge
5. Chronic Diseases: A Silent Epidemic
6. Nutritional Deficiencies: A Global Health Issue
7. Mental Health: A Neglected Crisis
8. National Health Programs in India: An Overview
9. Communicable Disease Control and Prevention
10. Non-Communicable Disease Control and Prevention

This book aims to be a valuable resource for healthcare professionals, policymakers, and the general public, providing a comprehensive understanding of the major public health challenges facing our society.

— Editor

Contents

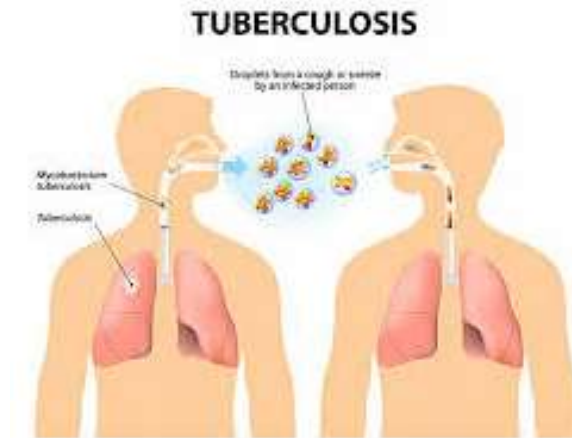
Preface	v
1. Tuberculosis	1
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
2. Communicable Disease Awareness	11
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
3. HIV AIDs	21
<i>Mr. Pankaj Kumawat</i>	
4. National Nutritional Anaemia Control Programme in India	40
<i>Mr. Pankaj Kumawat</i>	
5. National Mental Health Programme	47
<i>Mr. Pankaj Kumawat</i>	
6. National Programme for Prevention and Control of Cancer, Diabetes, Cardiovascular Diseases and Stroke	55
<i>Mr. Pankaj Kumawat</i>	
7. National Vector Borne Disease Control Programm	65
<i>Mr. Chirag Trivedi</i>	
8. National Iodine Deficiency Disorders Control Programme (NIDDCP)	73
<i>Mr. Chirag Trivedi</i>	
9. Revised National Tuberculosis Control Programme	80
<i>Mr. Chirag Trivedi</i>	
10. MCH Services	86
<i>Ms. Arti Dave</i>	

1

Tuberculosis

Ms. Nidhi Chauhan¹

Tuberculosis is a bacterial infection that is also known as TB. It can be fatal if not treated. TB most often affects your lungs, but can also affect other organs like your brain.



Overview

Your lungs, connected to your trachea, are infected with tuberculosis bacteria, causing tuberculosis.

Your lungs are infected with tuberculosis bacteria when you have tuberculosis.

1. Nursing Tutor, AION

Public Health Challenges: A Comprehensive Guides

Public Health Challenges: A Comprehensive Guides

Editor

Prof. Pinal Ghoghara

MARK PUBLISHERS
DELHI

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Public Health Challenges:
A Comprehensive Guides

Author : Prof. Pinal Ghoghara

Edition : 2021

ISBN : 978-81-89472-36-8

Published by :

Mark Publishers
Jaipur

Exclusive Distributor

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,
Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,
Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032
E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by :

In-house

Preface

Overview

This comprehensive book delves into a range of pressing public health issues, examining their epidemiology, prevention, control, and treatment strategies. It explores the complexities of infectious diseases, chronic illnesses, and nutritional deficiencies, as well as the national programs implemented to address these challenges.

Key Topics

- **Infectious Diseases:**
 - Tuberculosis: A persistent global health threat
 - HIV/AIDS: A complex pandemic
 - Vector-borne diseases: Malaria, dengue fever, and more
- **Chronic Diseases:**
 - Cancer, diabetes, cardiovascular diseases, and stroke: A growing burden
- **Nutritional Deficiencies:**
 - Iodine deficiency disorders: A silent epidemic
 - Anemia: A widespread health problem
- **Mental Health:**
 - Mental health disorders: A global concern
 - National Mental Health Programme: Addressing mental health needs in India
- **Public Health Programs and Policies:**
 - National Tuberculosis Control Programme
 - National AIDS Control Programme
 - National Vector Borne Disease Control Programme
 - National Iodine Deficiency Disorders Control Programme
 - National Nutritional Anaemia Control Programme
 - National Programme for Prevention and Control of Cancer, Diabetes, Cardiovascular Diseases and Stroke

Target Audience

- Public health professionals
- Healthcare providers
- Medical students
- Policymakers
- Health advocates
- General public

Unique Selling Points

- **Comprehensive Coverage:** A wide range of public health challenges.
- **In-depth Analysis:** Detailed exploration of each topic.
- **Evidence-Based Approach:** Drawing on the latest research and guidelines.
- **Practical Strategies:** Real-world solutions and interventions.
- **Indian Context:** Focus on India's public health landscape.

Potential Chapters

1. Introduction to Public Health
2. Tuberculosis: A Persistent Global Threat
3. HIV/AIDS: A Complex Pandemic
4. Vector-Borne Diseases: A Growing Challenge
5. Chronic Diseases: A Silent Epidemic
6. Nutritional Deficiencies: A Global Health Issue
7. Mental Health: A Neglected Crisis
8. National Health Programs in India: An Overview
9. Communicable Disease Control and Prevention
10. Non-Communicable Disease Control and Prevention

This book aims to be a valuable resource for healthcare professionals, policymakers, and the general public, providing a comprehensive understanding of the major public health challenges facing our society.

— Editor

Contents

Preface	v
1. Tuberculosis	1
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
2. Communicable Disease Awareness	11
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
3. HIV AIDs	21
<i>Mr. Pankaj Kumawat</i>	
4. National Nutritional Anaemia Control Programme in India	40
<i>Mr. Pankaj Kumawat</i>	
5. National Mental Health Programme	47
<i>Mr. Pankaj Kumawat</i>	
6. National Programme for Prevention and Control of Cancer, Diabetes, Cardiovascular Diseases and Stroke	55
<i>Mr. Pankaj Kumawat</i>	
7. National Vector Borne Disease Control Programm	65
<i>Mr. Chirag Trivedi</i>	
8. National Iodine Deficiency Disorders Control Programme (NIDDCP)	73
<i>Mr. Chirag Trivedi</i>	
9. Revised National Tuberculosis Control Programme	80
<i>Mr. Chirag Trivedi</i>	
10. MCH Services	86
<i>Ms. Arti Dave</i>	

2

Communicable Disease Awareness

Ms. Nidhi Chauhan¹

Introduction

Any undesirable deviation from an organism's normal physical or physiological condition is referred to as a disease. Diseases usually have specific signs and symptoms and are different from physical injuries in nature. A diseased organism often displays symptoms or signs of its abnormal condition. Thus, it is essential to understand an organism's normal state to identify disease symptoms.

Most diseases are communicable; they can transfer from one person to another by vectors, contaminated food, drink, or air, among other means. Microbial agents use different mediums to spread from an infected individual to a non-infected person. Since they are spread through contact, they are known as communicable diseases. According to medical records, there are over 20,000 diseases that affect millions of individuals each year.

This article will discuss communicable diseases, their characteristics, types, symptoms, and how to prevent them.

Communicable Disease Definition

A communicable disease can be transmitted from one person to another in several ways, such as contact with blood or body fluids, inhalation of an airborne virus, or insect bites.

1. Nursing Tutor, AION

Public Health Challenges: A Comprehensive Guides

Public Health Challenges: A Comprehensive Guides

Editor

Prof. Pinal Ghoghara

MARK PUBLISHERS
DELHI

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Public Health Challenges:
A Comprehensive Guides

Author : Prof. Pinal Ghoghara

Edition : 2021

ISBN : 978-81-89472-36-8

Published by :

Mark Publishers
Jaipur

Exclusive Distributor

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,
Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,
Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032
E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by :

In-house

Preface

Overview

This comprehensive book delves into a range of pressing public health issues, examining their epidemiology, prevention, control, and treatment strategies. It explores the complexities of infectious diseases, chronic illnesses, and nutritional deficiencies, as well as the national programs implemented to address these challenges.

Key Topics

- **Infectious Diseases:**
 - Tuberculosis: A persistent global health threat
 - HIV/AIDS: A complex pandemic
 - Vector-borne diseases: Malaria, dengue fever, and more
- **Chronic Diseases:**
 - Cancer, diabetes, cardiovascular diseases, and stroke: A growing burden
- **Nutritional Deficiencies:**
 - Iodine deficiency disorders: A silent epidemic
 - Anemia: A widespread health problem
- **Mental Health:**
 - Mental health disorders: A global concern
 - National Mental Health Programme: Addressing mental health needs in India
- **Public Health Programs and Policies:**
 - National Tuberculosis Control Programme
 - National AIDS Control Programme
 - National Vector Borne Disease Control Programme
 - National Iodine Deficiency Disorders Control Programme
 - National Nutritional Anaemia Control Programme
 - National Programme for Prevention and Control of Cancer, Diabetes, Cardiovascular Diseases and Stroke

Target Audience

- Public health professionals
- Healthcare providers
- Medical students
- Policymakers
- Health advocates
- General public

Unique Selling Points

- **Comprehensive Coverage:** A wide range of public health challenges.
- **In-depth Analysis:** Detailed exploration of each topic.
- **Evidence-Based Approach:** Drawing on the latest research and guidelines.
- **Practical Strategies:** Real-world solutions and interventions.
- **Indian Context:** Focus on India's public health landscape.

Potential Chapters

1. Introduction to Public Health
2. Tuberculosis: A Persistent Global Threat
3. HIV/AIDS: A Complex Pandemic
4. Vector-Borne Diseases: A Growing Challenge
5. Chronic Diseases: A Silent Epidemic
6. Nutritional Deficiencies: A Global Health Issue
7. Mental Health: A Neglected Crisis
8. National Health Programs in India: An Overview
9. Communicable Disease Control and Prevention
10. Non-Communicable Disease Control and Prevention

This book aims to be a valuable resource for healthcare professionals, policymakers, and the general public, providing a comprehensive understanding of the major public health challenges facing our society.

— Editor

Contents

Preface	v
1. Tuberculosis	1
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
2. Communicable Disease Awareness	11
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
3. HIV AIDs	21
<i>Mr. Pankaj Kumawat</i>	
4. National Nutritional Anaemia Control Programme in India	40
<i>Mr. Pankaj Kumawat</i>	
5. National Mental Health Programme	47
<i>Mr. Pankaj Kumawat</i>	
6. National Programme for Prevention and Control of Cancer, Diabetes, Cardiovascular Diseases and Stroke	55
<i>Mr. Pankaj Kumawat</i>	
7. National Vector Borne Disease Control Programm	65
<i>Mr. Chirag Trivedi</i>	
8. National Iodine Deficiency Disorders Control Programme (NIDDCP)	73
<i>Mr. Chirag Trivedi</i>	
9. Revised National Tuberculosis Control Programme	80
<i>Mr. Chirag Trivedi</i>	
10. MCH Services	86
<i>Ms. Arti Dave</i>	

3

HIV AIDs

Mr. Pankaj Kumawat¹

AIDS

AIDS is the final and most serious stage of an HIV infection. People with AIDS have very low counts of certain white blood cells and severely damaged immune systems. They may have additional illnesses that indicate that they have progressed to AIDS.

Without treatment, HIV infections progress to AIDS in about 10 years.

HIV

HIV stands for human immunodeficiency virus. HIV infects and destroys cells of your immune system, making it hard to fight off other diseases. When HIV has severely weakened your immune system, it can lead to acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS).

Because HIV works backward to insert its instructions into your DNA, it is called a retrovirus.

What's the difference between HIV and AIDS?

The difference between HIV and AIDS is that HIV is a virus that weakens your immune system. AIDS is a condition that can happen as a result of an HIV infection when your immune system is severely weakened.

You can't get AIDS if you aren't infected with HIV. Thanks to treatment that slows down the effects of the virus, not everyone

1. Nursing Tutor, AION

Public Health Challenges: A Comprehensive Guides

Public Health Challenges: A Comprehensive Guides

Editor

Prof. Pinal Ghoghara

MARK PUBLISHERS
DELHI

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Public Health Challenges:
A Comprehensive Guides

Author : Prof. Pinal Ghoghara

Edition : 2021

ISBN : 978-81-89472-36-8

Published by :

Mark Publishers
Jaipur

Exclusive Distributor

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,
Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,
Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032
E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by :

In-house

Preface

Overview

This comprehensive book delves into a range of pressing public health issues, examining their epidemiology, prevention, control, and treatment strategies. It explores the complexities of infectious diseases, chronic illnesses, and nutritional deficiencies, as well as the national programs implemented to address these challenges.

Key Topics

- **Infectious Diseases:**
 - Tuberculosis: A persistent global health threat
 - HIV/AIDS: A complex pandemic
 - Vector-borne diseases: Malaria, dengue fever, and more
- **Chronic Diseases:**
 - Cancer, diabetes, cardiovascular diseases, and stroke: A growing burden
- **Nutritional Deficiencies:**
 - Iodine deficiency disorders: A silent epidemic
 - Anemia: A widespread health problem
- **Mental Health:**
 - Mental health disorders: A global concern
 - National Mental Health Programme: Addressing mental health needs in India
- **Public Health Programs and Policies:**
 - National Tuberculosis Control Programme
 - National AIDS Control Programme
 - National Vector Borne Disease Control Programme
 - National Iodine Deficiency Disorders Control Programme
 - National Nutritional Anaemia Control Programme
 - National Programme for Prevention and Control of Cancer, Diabetes, Cardiovascular Diseases and Stroke

Target Audience

- Public health professionals
- Healthcare providers
- Medical students
- Policymakers
- Health advocates
- General public

Unique Selling Points

- **Comprehensive Coverage:** A wide range of public health challenges.
- **In-depth Analysis:** Detailed exploration of each topic.
- **Evidence-Based Approach:** Drawing on the latest research and guidelines.
- **Practical Strategies:** Real-world solutions and interventions.
- **Indian Context:** Focus on India's public health landscape.

Potential Chapters

1. Introduction to Public Health
2. Tuberculosis: A Persistent Global Threat
3. HIV/AIDS: A Complex Pandemic
4. Vector-Borne Diseases: A Growing Challenge
5. Chronic Diseases: A Silent Epidemic
6. Nutritional Deficiencies: A Global Health Issue
7. Mental Health: A Neglected Crisis
8. National Health Programs in India: An Overview
9. Communicable Disease Control and Prevention
10. Non-Communicable Disease Control and Prevention

This book aims to be a valuable resource for healthcare professionals, policymakers, and the general public, providing a comprehensive understanding of the major public health challenges facing our society.

— Editor

Contents

Preface	v
1. Tuberculosis	1
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
2. Communicable Disease Awareness	11
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
3. HIV AIDs	21
<i>Mr. Pankaj Kumawat</i>	
4. National Nutritional Anaemia Control Programme in India	40
<i>Mr. Pankaj Kumawat</i>	
5. National Mental Health Programme	47
<i>Mr. Pankaj Kumawat</i>	
6. National Programme for Prevention and Control of Cancer, Diabetes, Cardiovascular Diseases and Stroke	55
<i>Mr. Pankaj Kumawat</i>	
7. National Vector Borne Disease Control Programm	65
<i>Mr. Chirag Trivedi</i>	
8. National Iodine Deficiency Disorders Control Programme (NIDDCP)	73
<i>Mr. Chirag Trivedi</i>	
9. Revised National Tuberculosis Control Programme	80
<i>Mr. Chirag Trivedi</i>	
10. MCH Services	86
<i>Ms. Arti Dave</i>	

4

National Nutritional Anaemia Control Programme in India

Mr. Pankaj Kumawat¹

ANAEMIA MUKT BHARAT

Anaemia is a significant public health challenge in India. Iron deficiency anaemia results in impaired cognitive and motor development in children and decreased work capacity in adults. The effects are most severe in infancy and early childhood. In pregnancy, iron deficiency anaemia can lead to perinatal loss, prematurity and low birth weight (LBW) babies. Anemia Mukh Bharat strategy is implemented to reduce anaemia among six beneficiaries age group - children (6-59 months), children (5-9 years), adolescents (10-19 years), pregnant and lactating women and in women of reproductive age group (15-49 years) in life cycle approach through implementation of six interventions via robust institutional mechanism.



1. Assistant Professor, AION

Public Health Challenges: A Comprehensive Guides

Public Health Challenges: A Comprehensive Guides

Editor

Prof. Pinal Ghoghara

MARK PUBLISHERS
DELHI

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Public Health Challenges:
A Comprehensive Guides

Author : Prof. Pinal Ghoghara

Edition : 2021

ISBN : 978-81-89472-36-8

Published by :

Mark Publishers
Jaipur

Exclusive Distributor

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,
Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,
Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032
E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by :

In-house

Preface

Overview

This comprehensive book delves into a range of pressing public health issues, examining their epidemiology, prevention, control, and treatment strategies. It explores the complexities of infectious diseases, chronic illnesses, and nutritional deficiencies, as well as the national programs implemented to address these challenges.

Key Topics

- **Infectious Diseases:**
 - Tuberculosis: A persistent global health threat
 - HIV/AIDS: A complex pandemic
 - Vector-borne diseases: Malaria, dengue fever, and more
- **Chronic Diseases:**
 - Cancer, diabetes, cardiovascular diseases, and stroke: A growing burden
- **Nutritional Deficiencies:**
 - Iodine deficiency disorders: A silent epidemic
 - Anemia: A widespread health problem
- **Mental Health:**
 - Mental health disorders: A global concern
 - National Mental Health Programme: Addressing mental health needs in India
- **Public Health Programs and Policies:**
 - National Tuberculosis Control Programme
 - National AIDS Control Programme
 - National Vector Borne Disease Control Programme
 - National Iodine Deficiency Disorders Control Programme
 - National Nutritional Anaemia Control Programme
 - National Programme for Prevention and Control of Cancer, Diabetes, Cardiovascular Diseases and Stroke

Target Audience

- Public health professionals
- Healthcare providers
- Medical students
- Policymakers
- Health advocates
- General public

Unique Selling Points

- **Comprehensive Coverage:** A wide range of public health challenges.
- **In-depth Analysis:** Detailed exploration of each topic.
- **Evidence-Based Approach:** Drawing on the latest research and guidelines.
- **Practical Strategies:** Real-world solutions and interventions.
- **Indian Context:** Focus on India's public health landscape.

Potential Chapters

1. Introduction to Public Health
2. Tuberculosis: A Persistent Global Threat
3. HIV/AIDS: A Complex Pandemic
4. Vector-Borne Diseases: A Growing Challenge
5. Chronic Diseases: A Silent Epidemic
6. Nutritional Deficiencies: A Global Health Issue
7. Mental Health: A Neglected Crisis
8. National Health Programs in India: An Overview
9. Communicable Disease Control and Prevention
10. Non-Communicable Disease Control and Prevention

This book aims to be a valuable resource for healthcare professionals, policymakers, and the general public, providing a comprehensive understanding of the major public health challenges facing our society.

— Editor

Contents

Preface	v
1. Tuberculosis	1
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
2. Communicable Disease Awareness	11
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
3. HIV AIDs	21
<i>Mr. Pankaj Kumawat</i>	
4. National Nutritional Anaemia Control Programme in India	40
<i>Mr. Pankaj Kumawat</i>	
5. National Mental Health Programme	47
<i>Mr. Pankaj Kumawat</i>	
6. National Programme for Prevention and Control of Cancer, Diabetes, Cardiovascular Diseases and Stroke	55
<i>Mr. Pankaj Kumawat</i>	
7. National Vector Borne Disease Control Programm	65
<i>Mr. Chirag Trivedi</i>	
8. National Iodine Deficiency Disorders Control Programme (NIDDCP)	73
<i>Mr. Chirag Trivedi</i>	
9. Revised National Tuberculosis Control Programme	80
<i>Mr. Chirag Trivedi</i>	
10. MCH Services	86
<i>Ms. Arti Dave</i>	

5

National Mental Health Programme

Mr. Pankaj Kumawat¹

INTRODUCTION

To address the huge burden of mental disorders and shortage of qualified professionals in the field of mental health, Government of India has been implementing National Mental Health Program (NMHP) since 1982. The district Mental Health Program was added to the Program in 1996. The Program was re-strategized in 2003 to include two schemes, viz. Modernization of State Mental Hospitals and Up-gradation of Psychiatric Wings of Medical Colleges/General Hospitals. The Manpower development scheme (Scheme-A & B) became part of the Program in 2009.

Objectives

1. To ensure the availability and accessibility of minimum mental healthcare for all in the foreseeable future;
2. To encourage the application of mental health knowledge in general healthcare and in social development;
3. To promote community participation in the mental health service development; and
4. To enhance human resource in mental health sub-specialties.

Components:

I. **District and sub-district level activities under NHM:**

1. Assosiat Professor, Aion

Public Health Challenges: A Comprehensive Guides

Public Health Challenges: A Comprehensive Guides

Editor

Prof. Pinal Ghoghara

MARK PUBLISHERS
DELHI

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Public Health Challenges:
A Comprehensive Guides

Author : Prof. Pinal Ghoghara

Edition : 2021

ISBN : 978-81-89472-36-8

Published by :

Mark Publishers
Jaipur

Exclusive Distributor

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,
Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,
Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032
E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by :

In-house

Preface

Overview

This comprehensive book delves into a range of pressing public health issues, examining their epidemiology, prevention, control, and treatment strategies. It explores the complexities of infectious diseases, chronic illnesses, and nutritional deficiencies, as well as the national programs implemented to address these challenges.

Key Topics

- **Infectious Diseases:**
 - Tuberculosis: A persistent global health threat
 - HIV/AIDS: A complex pandemic
 - Vector-borne diseases: Malaria, dengue fever, and more
- **Chronic Diseases:**
 - Cancer, diabetes, cardiovascular diseases, and stroke: A growing burden
- **Nutritional Deficiencies:**
 - Iodine deficiency disorders: A silent epidemic
 - Anemia: A widespread health problem
- **Mental Health:**
 - Mental health disorders: A global concern
 - National Mental Health Programme: Addressing mental health needs in India
- **Public Health Programs and Policies:**
 - National Tuberculosis Control Programme
 - National AIDS Control Programme
 - National Vector Borne Disease Control Programme
 - National Iodine Deficiency Disorders Control Programme
 - National Nutritional Anaemia Control Programme
 - National Programme for Prevention and Control of Cancer, Diabetes, Cardiovascular Diseases and Stroke

Target Audience

- Public health professionals
- Healthcare providers
- Medical students
- Policymakers
- Health advocates
- General public

Unique Selling Points

- **Comprehensive Coverage:** A wide range of public health challenges.
- **In-depth Analysis:** Detailed exploration of each topic.
- **Evidence-Based Approach:** Drawing on the latest research and guidelines.
- **Practical Strategies:** Real-world solutions and interventions.
- **Indian Context:** Focus on India's public health landscape.

Potential Chapters

1. Introduction to Public Health
2. Tuberculosis: A Persistent Global Threat
3. HIV/AIDS: A Complex Pandemic
4. Vector-Borne Diseases: A Growing Challenge
5. Chronic Diseases: A Silent Epidemic
6. Nutritional Deficiencies: A Global Health Issue
7. Mental Health: A Neglected Crisis
8. National Health Programs in India: An Overview
9. Communicable Disease Control and Prevention
10. Non-Communicable Disease Control and Prevention

This book aims to be a valuable resource for healthcare professionals, policymakers, and the general public, providing a comprehensive understanding of the major public health challenges facing our society.

— Editor

Contents

Preface	v
1. Tuberculosis	1
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
2. Communicable Disease Awareness	11
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
3. HIV AIDs	21
<i>Mr. Pankaj Kumawat</i>	
4. National Nutritional Anaemia Control Programme in India	40
<i>Mr. Pankaj Kumawat</i>	
5. National Mental Health Programme	47
<i>Mr. Pankaj Kumawat</i>	
6. National Programme for Prevention and Control of Cancer, Diabetes, Cardiovascular Diseases and Stroke	55
<i>Mr. Pankaj Kumawat</i>	
7. National Vector Borne Disease Control Programm	65
<i>Mr. Chirag Trivedi</i>	
8. National Iodine Deficiency Disorders Control Programme (NIDDCP)	73
<i>Mr. Chirag Trivedi</i>	
9. Revised National Tuberculosis Control Programme	80
<i>Mr. Chirag Trivedi</i>	
10. MCH Services	86
<i>Ms. Arti Dave</i>	

6

National Programme for Prevention and Control of Cancer, Diabetes, Cardiovascular Diseases and Stroke

Mr. Pankaj Kumawat¹

INTRODUCTION

In India, Non-Communicable Diseases (NCDs) like Cardiovascular Diseases (CVD), Cancer, Chronic Respiratory Diseases, Diabetes are estimated to account for around 60% of all deaths, . The Government of India has been implementing National Programme for Prevention and Control of Cancer, Diabetes, Cardiovascular Diseases and Stroke (NPCDCS) since 2010 up to District level under the National Health Mission. NPCDCS has a focus on awareness generation for behaviour and life-style changes, screening and early diagnosis of persons with high level of risk factors and their referral to appropriate treatment facilities i.e. Community Health Centres and District Hospital for management of non-communicable diseases including cardiovascular diseases. The strengthening of infrastructure for screening, early detection, treatment and referral is also envisaged.

Objectives

- Health promotion through behaviour change with involvement of community, civil society, community based organizations, media etc.

1. Assistant Professor, AION

Public Health Challenges: A Comprehensive Guides

Public Health Challenges: A Comprehensive Guides

Editor

Prof. Pinal Ghoghara

MARK PUBLISHERS
DELHI

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Public Health Challenges:
A Comprehensive Guides

Author : Prof. Pinal Ghoghara

Edition : 2021

ISBN : 978-81-89472-36-8

Published by :

Mark Publishers
Jaipur

Exclusive Distributor

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,
Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,
Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032
E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by :

In-house

Preface

Overview

This comprehensive book delves into a range of pressing public health issues, examining their epidemiology, prevention, control, and treatment strategies. It explores the complexities of infectious diseases, chronic illnesses, and nutritional deficiencies, as well as the national programs implemented to address these challenges.

Key Topics

- **Infectious Diseases:**
 - Tuberculosis: A persistent global health threat
 - HIV/AIDS: A complex pandemic
 - Vector-borne diseases: Malaria, dengue fever, and more
- **Chronic Diseases:**
 - Cancer, diabetes, cardiovascular diseases, and stroke: A growing burden
- **Nutritional Deficiencies:**
 - Iodine deficiency disorders: A silent epidemic
 - Anemia: A widespread health problem
- **Mental Health:**
 - Mental health disorders: A global concern
 - National Mental Health Programme: Addressing mental health needs in India
- **Public Health Programs and Policies:**
 - National Tuberculosis Control Programme
 - National AIDS Control Programme
 - National Vector Borne Disease Control Programme
 - National Iodine Deficiency Disorders Control Programme
 - National Nutritional Anaemia Control Programme
 - National Programme for Prevention and Control of Cancer, Diabetes, Cardiovascular Diseases and Stroke

Target Audience

- Public health professionals
- Healthcare providers
- Medical students
- Policymakers
- Health advocates
- General public

Unique Selling Points

- **Comprehensive Coverage:** A wide range of public health challenges.
- **In-depth Analysis:** Detailed exploration of each topic.
- **Evidence-Based Approach:** Drawing on the latest research and guidelines.
- **Practical Strategies:** Real-world solutions and interventions.
- **Indian Context:** Focus on India's public health landscape.

Potential Chapters

1. Introduction to Public Health
2. Tuberculosis: A Persistent Global Threat
3. HIV/AIDS: A Complex Pandemic
4. Vector-Borne Diseases: A Growing Challenge
5. Chronic Diseases: A Silent Epidemic
6. Nutritional Deficiencies: A Global Health Issue
7. Mental Health: A Neglected Crisis
8. National Health Programs in India: An Overview
9. Communicable Disease Control and Prevention
10. Non-Communicable Disease Control and Prevention

This book aims to be a valuable resource for healthcare professionals, policymakers, and the general public, providing a comprehensive understanding of the major public health challenges facing our society.

— Editor

Contents

Preface	v
1. Tuberculosis	1
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
2. Communicable Disease Awareness	11
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
3. HIV AIDs	21
<i>Mr. Pankaj Kumawat</i>	
4. National Nutritional Anaemia Control Programme in India	40
<i>Mr. Pankaj Kumawat</i>	
5. National Mental Health Programme	47
<i>Mr. Pankaj Kumawat</i>	
6. National Programme for Prevention and Control of Cancer, Diabetes, Cardiovascular Diseases and Stroke	55
<i>Mr. Pankaj Kumawat</i>	
7. National Vector Borne Disease Control Programm	65
<i>Mr. Chirag Trivedi</i>	
8. National Iodine Deficiency Disorders Control Programme (NIDDCP)	73
<i>Mr. Chirag Trivedi</i>	
9. Revised National Tuberculosis Control Programme	80
<i>Mr. Chirag Trivedi</i>	
10. MCH Services	86
<i>Ms. Arti Dave</i>	

7

National Vector Borne Disease Control Programm

Mr. Chirag Trivedi¹

History of Malaria Control in India

- In 1947, at India's independence 22% population of country was estimated to suffer from malaria with 75 million cases and 0.8 million deaths due to Malaria annually. To combat devastating effects of Malaria, the National Malaria Control Programme (NMCP) was launched in 1953 built around three key activities - insecticidal residual spray (IRS) with DDT; monitoring and surveillance of cases; and treatment of patients. Malaria related morbidity and mortality in India rapidly brought down within a few years. Encouraged by the programme's success. It was converted to National Malaria Eradication Programme (NMEP) in 1958. B
- In 1976, there was a massive resurgence of malaria with 6.46 million cases reported attributed to poor health infrastructure and sub-optimal monitoring and logistics in many parts of the country. In addition, *P. falciparum* resistance to chloroquine and vector resistance to insecticides were also reported. As a consequence, the modified plan of operations (MPO) was launched in 1977 with a three-pronged strategy: early diagnosis and prompt treatment, vector control and IEC/BCC with community participation. The malaria incidence showed a decline again and in 1984 the cases were reduced to about 2 million with 247 deaths. In order to combat malaria in high transmission areas of the country,

1. Nursing Tutor, AION

Public Health Challenges: A Comprehensive Guides

Public Health Challenges: A Comprehensive Guides

Editor

Prof. Pinal Ghoghara

MARK PUBLISHERS
DELHI

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Public Health Challenges:
A Comprehensive Guides

Author : Prof. Pinal Ghoghara

Edition : 2021

ISBN : 978-81-89472-36-8

Published by :

Mark Publishers
Jaipur

Exclusive Distributor

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,
Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,
Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032
E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by :

In-house

Preface

Overview

This comprehensive book delves into a range of pressing public health issues, examining their epidemiology, prevention, control, and treatment strategies. It explores the complexities of infectious diseases, chronic illnesses, and nutritional deficiencies, as well as the national programs implemented to address these challenges.

Key Topics

- **Infectious Diseases:**
 - Tuberculosis: A persistent global health threat
 - HIV/AIDS: A complex pandemic
 - Vector-borne diseases: Malaria, dengue fever, and more
- **Chronic Diseases:**
 - Cancer, diabetes, cardiovascular diseases, and stroke: A growing burden
- **Nutritional Deficiencies:**
 - Iodine deficiency disorders: A silent epidemic
 - Anemia: A widespread health problem
- **Mental Health:**
 - Mental health disorders: A global concern
 - National Mental Health Programme: Addressing mental health needs in India
- **Public Health Programs and Policies:**
 - National Tuberculosis Control Programme
 - National AIDS Control Programme
 - National Vector Borne Disease Control Programme
 - National Iodine Deficiency Disorders Control Programme
 - National Nutritional Anaemia Control Programme
 - National Programme for Prevention and Control of Cancer, Diabetes, Cardiovascular Diseases and Stroke

Target Audience

- Public health professionals
- Healthcare providers
- Medical students
- Policymakers
- Health advocates
- General public

Unique Selling Points

- **Comprehensive Coverage:** A wide range of public health challenges.
- **In-depth Analysis:** Detailed exploration of each topic.
- **Evidence-Based Approach:** Drawing on the latest research and guidelines.
- **Practical Strategies:** Real-world solutions and interventions.
- **Indian Context:** Focus on India's public health landscape.

Potential Chapters

1. Introduction to Public Health
2. Tuberculosis: A Persistent Global Threat
3. HIV/AIDS: A Complex Pandemic
4. Vector-Borne Diseases: A Growing Challenge
5. Chronic Diseases: A Silent Epidemic
6. Nutritional Deficiencies: A Global Health Issue
7. Mental Health: A Neglected Crisis
8. National Health Programs in India: An Overview
9. Communicable Disease Control and Prevention
10. Non-Communicable Disease Control and Prevention

This book aims to be a valuable resource for healthcare professionals, policymakers, and the general public, providing a comprehensive understanding of the major public health challenges facing our society.

— Editor

Contents

Preface	v
1. Tuberculosis	1
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
2. Communicable Disease Awareness	11
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
3. HIV AIDs	21
<i>Mr. Pankaj Kumawat</i>	
4. National Nutritional Anaemia Control Programme in India	40
<i>Mr. Pankaj Kumawat</i>	
5. National Mental Health Programme	47
<i>Mr. Pankaj Kumawat</i>	
6. National Programme for Prevention and Control of Cancer, Diabetes, Cardiovascular Diseases and Stroke	55
<i>Mr. Pankaj Kumawat</i>	
7. National Vector Borne Disease Control Programm	65
<i>Mr. Chirag Trivedi</i>	
8. National Iodine Deficiency Disorders Control Programme (NIDDCP)	73
<i>Mr. Chirag Trivedi</i>	
9. Revised National Tuberculosis Control Programme	80
<i>Mr. Chirag Trivedi</i>	
10. MCH Services	86
<i>Ms. Arti Dave</i>	

8

National Iodine Deficiency Disorders Control Programme (NIDDCP)

Mr. Chirag Trivedi¹

Introduction

Iodine is an essential micronutrient required daily at 100-150 micrograms for normal human growth and development. Deficiency of iodine can cause physical and mental retardation, cretinism, abortions, stillbirth, deaf mutism, squint & various types of goiter. As per the surveys conducted by the Directorate General of Health Services, Indian Council of Medical Research, Health Institutions and the State Health Directorates, it has been found that out of **414 districts surveyed** in all the 29 States and 7 UTs, **337 districts are endemic** i.e where the prevalence of Iodine Deficiency Disorders (IDDs) is more than 5% (Annexure-I).

Control Programme

Realizing the magnitude of the problem, the Government of India launched a 100 per cent centrally assisted National Goitre Control Programme (NGCP) in 1962. **In August, 1992 the National Goitre Control Programme (NGCP) was renamed as National Iodine Deficiency Disorders Control Programme (NIDDCP) with a view of wide spectrum of Iodine Deficiency Disorders like mental and physical retardation, deaf mutism, cretinism, still births, abortions etc..** The programme is being implemented in all the States/UTs for entire population.

1. Nursing Tutor, AION

Public Health Challenges: A Comprehensive Guides

Public Health Challenges: A Comprehensive Guides

Editor

Prof. Pinal Ghoghara

MARK PUBLISHERS
DELHI

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Public Health Challenges:
A Comprehensive Guides

Author : Prof. Pinal Ghoghara

Edition : 2021

ISBN : 978-81-89472-36-8

Published by :

Mark Publishers
Jaipur

Exclusive Distributor

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,
Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,
Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032
E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by :

In-house

Preface

Overview

This comprehensive book delves into a range of pressing public health issues, examining their epidemiology, prevention, control, and treatment strategies. It explores the complexities of infectious diseases, chronic illnesses, and nutritional deficiencies, as well as the national programs implemented to address these challenges.

Key Topics

- **Infectious Diseases:**
 - Tuberculosis: A persistent global health threat
 - HIV/AIDS: A complex pandemic
 - Vector-borne diseases: Malaria, dengue fever, and more
- **Chronic Diseases:**
 - Cancer, diabetes, cardiovascular diseases, and stroke: A growing burden
- **Nutritional Deficiencies:**
 - Iodine deficiency disorders: A silent epidemic
 - Anemia: A widespread health problem
- **Mental Health:**
 - Mental health disorders: A global concern
 - National Mental Health Programme: Addressing mental health needs in India
- **Public Health Programs and Policies:**
 - National Tuberculosis Control Programme
 - National AIDS Control Programme
 - National Vector Borne Disease Control Programme
 - National Iodine Deficiency Disorders Control Programme
 - National Nutritional Anaemia Control Programme
 - National Programme for Prevention and Control of Cancer, Diabetes, Cardiovascular Diseases and Stroke

Target Audience

- Public health professionals
- Healthcare providers
- Medical students
- Policymakers
- Health advocates
- General public

Unique Selling Points

- **Comprehensive Coverage:** A wide range of public health challenges.
- **In-depth Analysis:** Detailed exploration of each topic.
- **Evidence-Based Approach:** Drawing on the latest research and guidelines.
- **Practical Strategies:** Real-world solutions and interventions.
- **Indian Context:** Focus on India's public health landscape.

Potential Chapters

1. Introduction to Public Health
2. Tuberculosis: A Persistent Global Threat
3. HIV/AIDS: A Complex Pandemic
4. Vector-Borne Diseases: A Growing Challenge
5. Chronic Diseases: A Silent Epidemic
6. Nutritional Deficiencies: A Global Health Issue
7. Mental Health: A Neglected Crisis
8. National Health Programs in India: An Overview
9. Communicable Disease Control and Prevention
10. Non-Communicable Disease Control and Prevention

This book aims to be a valuable resource for healthcare professionals, policymakers, and the general public, providing a comprehensive understanding of the major public health challenges facing our society.

— Editor

Contents

Preface	v
1. Tuberculosis	1
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
2. Communicable Disease Awareness	11
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
3. HIV AIDs	21
<i>Mr. Pankaj Kumawat</i>	
4. National Nutritional Anaemia Control Programme in India	40
<i>Mr. Pankaj Kumawat</i>	
5. National Mental Health Programme	47
<i>Mr. Pankaj Kumawat</i>	
6. National Programme for Prevention and Control of Cancer, Diabetes, Cardiovascular Diseases and Stroke	55
<i>Mr. Pankaj Kumawat</i>	
7. National Vector Borne Disease Control Programm	65
<i>Mr. Chirag Trivedi</i>	
8. National Iodine Deficiency Disorders Control Programme (NIDDCP)	73
<i>Mr. Chirag Trivedi</i>	
9. Revised National Tuberculosis Control Programme	80
<i>Mr. Chirag Trivedi</i>	
10. MCH Services	86
<i>Ms. Arti Dave</i>	

9

Revised National Tuberculosis Control Programme

Mr. Chirag Trivedi¹

Introduction

The Revised National TB Control Programme (RNTCP), based on the internationally recommended Directly Observed Treatment Short-course (**DOTS**) strategy, was launched in 1997 expanded across the country in a phased manner with support from World Bank and other development partners. Full nation-wide coverage was achieved in March 2006. In terms of treatment of patients, RNTCP has been recognized as the largest and the fastest expanding TB control programme in the world. RNTCP is presently being implemented throughout the country.

Under the programme, diagnosis and treatment facilities are provided free of cost to all TB patients. For quality diagnosis, designated microscopy centers have been established for every one lac population in the general areas and for every 50,000 population in the tribal, hilly and difficult areas. More than 13000 microscopy centers have been established in the country. Free treatment services are available for TB at all Government hospitals, Community Health Centers (CHC), Primary Health Centers (PHCs). DOT centers have been established near to residence of patients to the extent possible. All public health facilities, sub centres, Community Volunteers, ASHA, Women Self Groups etc. also function as DOT Providers/DOT Centers.

Estimated TB Burden in India (as per Global TB report 2015)

1. Nursing Tutor, AION

Public Health Challenges: A Comprehensive Guides

Public Health Challenges: A Comprehensive Guides

Editor

Prof. Pinal Ghoghara

MARK PUBLISHERS
DELHI

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Public Health Challenges:
A Comprehensive Guides

Author : Prof. Pinal Ghoghara

Edition : 2021

ISBN : 978-81-89472-36-8

Published by :

Mark Publishers
Jaipur

Exclusive Distributor

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,
Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,
Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032
E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by :

In-house

Preface

Overview

This comprehensive book delves into a range of pressing public health issues, examining their epidemiology, prevention, control, and treatment strategies. It explores the complexities of infectious diseases, chronic illnesses, and nutritional deficiencies, as well as the national programs implemented to address these challenges.

Key Topics

- **Infectious Diseases:**
 - Tuberculosis: A persistent global health threat
 - HIV/AIDS: A complex pandemic
 - Vector-borne diseases: Malaria, dengue fever, and more
- **Chronic Diseases:**
 - Cancer, diabetes, cardiovascular diseases, and stroke: A growing burden
- **Nutritional Deficiencies:**
 - Iodine deficiency disorders: A silent epidemic
 - Anemia: A widespread health problem
- **Mental Health:**
 - Mental health disorders: A global concern
 - National Mental Health Programme: Addressing mental health needs in India
- **Public Health Programs and Policies:**
 - National Tuberculosis Control Programme
 - National AIDS Control Programme
 - National Vector Borne Disease Control Programme
 - National Iodine Deficiency Disorders Control Programme
 - National Nutritional Anaemia Control Programme
 - National Programme for Prevention and Control of Cancer, Diabetes, Cardiovascular Diseases and Stroke

Target Audience

- Public health professionals
- Healthcare providers
- Medical students
- Policymakers
- Health advocates
- General public

Unique Selling Points

- **Comprehensive Coverage:** A wide range of public health challenges.
- **In-depth Analysis:** Detailed exploration of each topic.
- **Evidence-Based Approach:** Drawing on the latest research and guidelines.
- **Practical Strategies:** Real-world solutions and interventions.
- **Indian Context:** Focus on India's public health landscape.

Potential Chapters

1. Introduction to Public Health
2. Tuberculosis: A Persistent Global Threat
3. HIV/AIDS: A Complex Pandemic
4. Vector-Borne Diseases: A Growing Challenge
5. Chronic Diseases: A Silent Epidemic
6. Nutritional Deficiencies: A Global Health Issue
7. Mental Health: A Neglected Crisis
8. National Health Programs in India: An Overview
9. Communicable Disease Control and Prevention
10. Non-Communicable Disease Control and Prevention

This book aims to be a valuable resource for healthcare professionals, policymakers, and the general public, providing a comprehensive understanding of the major public health challenges facing our society.

— Editor

Contents

Preface	v
1. Tuberculosis	1
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
2. Communicable Disease Awareness	11
<i>Ms. Nidhi Chauhan</i>	
3. HIV AIDs	21
<i>Mr. Pankaj Kumawat</i>	
4. National Nutritional Anaemia Control Programme in India	40
<i>Mr. Pankaj Kumawat</i>	
5. National Mental Health Programme	47
<i>Mr. Pankaj Kumawat</i>	
6. National Programme for Prevention and Control of Cancer, Diabetes, Cardiovascular Diseases and Stroke	55
<i>Mr. Pankaj Kumawat</i>	
7. National Vector Borne Disease Control Programm	65
<i>Mr. Chirag Trivedi</i>	
8. National Iodine Deficiency Disorders Control Programme (NIDDCP)	73
<i>Mr. Chirag Trivedi</i>	
9. Revised National Tuberculosis Control Programme	80
<i>Mr. Chirag Trivedi</i>	
10. MCH Services	86
<i>Ms. Arti Dave</i>	

Introduction

Status of women and Children in Developing Countries: Throughout the world, women and children are the most vulnerable and the least serviced. In the less technically developed areas of the world, disease and death take the highest toll among mothers and children who make up over two-thirds of the population. Prenatal mortality may be as much as ten times higher than that of infants born in industrialized countries; the infant mortality rate may be six to twenty times greater than that of the industrialized regions of Europe and North America; the death rate among pre-school children is also up to ten times as high.

Furthermore, in technically underdeveloped countries half of the total mortality may occur in children under 5 years of age compared to only 5% in countries such as United Kingdom and Sweden. This pattern of death and ill health extends to women not only in the form of maternal mortality, but also in the form of morbidity. Maternal mortality reaches as high as 1,000 per 100,000 live births in developing countries compared to 5 to 30 per 100,000 in industrialized countries. Women who do not die in childbirth suffer from a number of debilitating conditions including:

- maternal depletion related to pregnancy at an early age;
- continuous cycles of pregnancy;
- inadequate diet leading to anemia or malnutrition and;

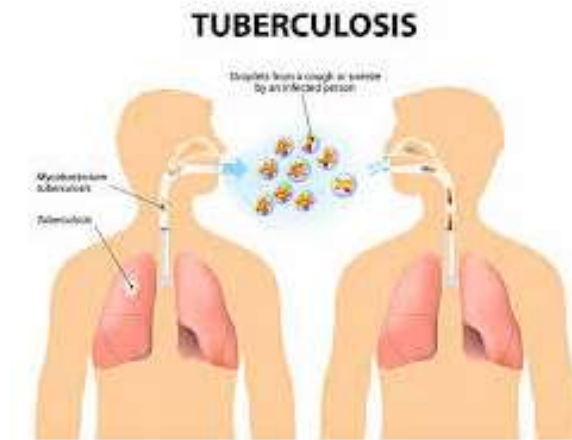
1. Nursing Tutor, AION

1

Tuberculosis

Ms. Nidhi Chauhan¹

Tuberculosis is a bacterial infection that is also known as TB. It can be fatal if not treated. TB most often affects your lungs, but can also affect other organs like your brain.



Overview

Your lungs, connected to your trachea, are infected with tuberculosis bacteria, causing tuberculosis.

Your lungs are infected with tuberculosis bacteria when you have tuberculosis.

1. Nursing Tutor, AION

2

Communicable Disease Awareness

Ms. Nidhi Chauhan¹

Introduction

Any undesirable deviation from an organism's normal physical or physiological condition is referred to as a disease. Diseases usually have specific signs and symptoms and are different from physical injuries in nature. A diseased organism often displays symptoms or signs of its abnormal condition. Thus, it is essential to understand an organism's normal state to identify disease symptoms.

Most diseases are communicable; they can transfer from one person to another by vectors, contaminated food, drink, or air, among other means. Microbial agents use different mediums to spread from an infected individual to a non-infected person. Since they are spread through contact, they are known as communicable diseases. According to medical records, there are over 20,000 diseases that affect millions of individuals each year.

This article will discuss communicable diseases, their characteristics, types, symptoms, and how to prevent them.

Communicable Disease Definition

A communicable disease can be transmitted from one person to another in several ways, such as contact with blood or body fluids, inhalation of an airborne virus, or insect bites.

1. Nursing Tutor, AION

3

HIV AIDs

Mr. Pankaj Kumawat¹

AIDS

AIDS is the final and most serious stage of an HIV infection. People with AIDS have very low counts of certain white blood cells and severely damaged immune systems. They may have additional illnesses that indicate that they have progressed to AIDS.

Without treatment, HIV infections progress to AIDS in about 10 years.

HIV

HIV stands for human immunodeficiency virus. HIV infects and destroys cells of your immune system, making it hard to fight off other diseases. When HIV has severely weakened your immune system, it can lead to acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS).

Because HIV works backward to insert its instructions into your DNA, it is called a retrovirus.

What's the difference between HIV and AIDS?

The difference between HIV and AIDS is that HIV is a virus that weakens your immune system. AIDS is a condition that can happen as a result of an HIV infection when your immune system is severely weakened.

You can't get AIDS if you aren't infected with HIV. Thanks to treatment that slows down the effects of the virus, not everyone

1. Nursing Tutor, AION

4

National Nutritional Anaemia Control Programme in India

Mr. Pankaj Kumawat¹

ANAEMIA MUKT BHARAT

Anaemia is a significant public health challenge in India. Iron deficiency anaemia results in impaired cognitive and motor development in children and decreased work capacity in adults. The effects are most severe in infancy and early childhood. In pregnancy, iron deficiency anaemia can lead to perinatal loss, prematurity and low birth weight (LBW) babies. Anemia Mukh Bharat strategy is implemented to reduce anaemia among six beneficiaries age group - children (6-59 months), children (5-9 years), adolescents (10-19 years), pregnant and lactating women and in women of reproductive age group (15-49 years) in life cycle approach through implementation of six interventions via robust institutional mechanism.



1. Assistant Professor, AION

5

National Mental Health Programme

Mr. Pankaj Kumawat¹

INTRODUCTION

To address the huge burden of mental disorders and shortage of qualified professionals in the field of mental health, Government of India has been implementing National Mental Health Program (NMHP) since 1982. The district Mental Health Program was added to the Program in 1996. The Program was re-strategized in 2003 to include two schemes, viz. Modernization of State Mental Hospitals and Up-gradation of Psychiatric Wings of Medical Colleges/General Hospitals. The Manpower development scheme (Scheme-A & B) became part of the Program in 2009.

Objectives

1. To ensure the availability and accessibility of minimum mental healthcare for all in the foreseeable future;
2. To encourage the application of mental health knowledge in general healthcare and in social development;
3. To promote community participation in the mental health service development; and
4. To enhance human resource in mental health sub-specialties.

Components:

- I. **District and sub-district level activities under NHM:**

1. Assosiat Professor, Aion

6

National Programme for Prevention and Control of Cancer, Diabetes, Cardiovascular Diseases and Stroke

Mr. Pankaj Kumawat¹

INTRODUCTION

In India, Non-Communicable Diseases (NCDs) like Cardiovascular Diseases (CVD), Cancer, Chronic Respiratory Diseases, Diabetes are estimated to account for around 60% of all deaths, . The Government of India has been implementing National Programme for Prevention and Control of Cancer, Diabetes, Cardiovascular Diseases and Stroke (NPCDCS) since 2010 up to District level under the National Health Mission. NPCDCS has a focus on awareness generation for behaviour and life-style changes, screening and early diagnosis of persons with high level of risk factors and their referral to appropriate treatment facilities i.e. Community Health Centres and District Hospital for management of non-communicable diseases including cardiovascular diseases. The strengthening of infrastructure for screening, early detection, treatment and referral is also envisaged.

Objectives

- Health promotion through behaviour change with involvement of community, civil society, community based organizations, media etc.

1. Assistant Professor, AION

7

National Vector Borne Disease Control Programm

Mr. Chirag Trivedi¹

History of Malaria Control in India

- In 1947, at India's independence 22% population of country was estimated to suffer from malaria with 75 million cases and 0.8 million deaths due to Malaria annually. To combat devastating effects of Malaria, the National Malaria Control Programme (NMCP) was launched in 1953 built around three key activities - insecticidal residual spray (IRS) with DDT; monitoring and surveillance of cases; and treatment of patients. Malaria related morbidity and mortality in India rapidly brought down within a few years. Encouraged by the programme's success. It was converted to National Malaria Eradication Programme (NMEP) in 1958.
- But in 1976, there was a massive resurgence of malaria with 6.46 million cases reported attributed to poor health infrastructure and sub-optimal monitoring and logistics in many parts of the country. In addition, *P. falciparum* resistance to chloroquine and vector resistance to insecticides were also reported. As a consequence, the modified plan of operations (MPO) was launched in 1977 with a three-pronged strategy: early diagnosis and prompt treatment, vector control and IEC/BCC with community participation. The malaria incidence showed a decline again and in 1984 the cases were reduced to about 2 million with 247 deaths. In order to combat malaria in high transmission areas of the country,

1. Nursing Tutor, AION

8

National Iodine Deficiency Disorders Control Programme (NIDDCP)

Mr. Chirag Trivedi¹

Introduction

Iodine is an essential micronutrient required daily at 100-150 micrograms for normal human growth and development. Deficiency of iodine can cause physical and mental retardation, cretinism, abortions, stillbirth, deaf mutism, squint & various types of goiter. As per the surveys conducted by the Directorate General of Health Services, Indian Council of Medical Research, Health Institutions and the State Health Directorates, it has been found that out of **414 districts surveyed** in all the 29 States and 7 UTs, **337 districts are endemic** i.e where the prevalence of Iodine Deficiency Disorders (IDDs) is more than 5% (Annexure-I).

Control Programme

Realizing the magnitude of the problem, the Government of India launched a 100 per cent centrally assisted National Goitre Control Programme (NGCP) in 1962. **In August, 1992 the National Goitre Control Programme (NGCP) was renamed as National Iodine Deficiency Disorders Control Programme (NIDDCP) with a view of wide spectrum of Iodine Deficiency Disorders like mental and physical retardation, deaf mutism, cretinism, still births, abortions etc..** The programme is being implemented in all the States/UTs for entire population.

1. Nursing Tutor, AION

9

Revised National Tuberculosis Control Programme

Mr. Chirag Trivedi¹

Introduction

The Revised National TB Control Programme (RNTCP), based on the internationally recommended Directly Observed Treatment Short-course (DOTS) strategy, was launched in 1997 expanded across the country in a phased manner with support from World Bank and other development partners. Full nation-wide coverage was achieved in March 2006. In terms of treatment of patients, RNTCP has been recognized as the largest and the fastest expanding TB control programme in the world. RNTCP is presently being implemented throughout the country.

Under the programme, diagnosis and treatment facilities are provided free of cost to all TB patients. For quality diagnosis, designated microscopy centers have been established for every one lac population in the general areas and for every 50,000 population in the tribal, hilly and difficult areas. More than 13000 microscopy centers have been established in the country. Free treatment services are available for TB at all Government hospitals, Community Health Centers (CHC), Primary Health Centers (PHCs). DOT centers have been established near to residence of patients to the extent possible. All public health facilities, sub centres, Community Volunteers, ASHA, Women Self Groups etc. also function as DOT Providers/DOT Centers.

Estimated TB Burden in India (as per Global TB report 2015)

1. Nursing Tutor, AION

Introduction

Status of women and Children in Developing Countries: Throughout the world, women and children are the most vulnerable and the least serviced. In the less technically developed areas of the world, disease and death take the highest toll among mothers and children who make up over two-thirds of the population. Prenatal mortality may be as much as ten times higher than that of infants born in industrialized countries; the infant mortality rate may be six to twenty times greater than that of the industrialized regions of Europe and North America; the death rate among pre-school children is also up to ten times as high.

Furthermore, in technically underdeveloped countries half of the total mortality may occur in children under 5 years of age compared to only 5% in countries such as United Kingdom and Sweden. This pattern of death and ill health extends to women not only in the form of maternal mortality, but also in the form of morbidity. Maternal mortality reaches as high as 1,000 per 100,000 live births in developing countries compared to 5 to 30 per 100,000 in industrialized countries. Women who do not die in childbirth suffer from a number of debilitating conditions including:

- maternal depletion related to pregnancy at an early age;
- continuous cycles of pregnancy;
- inadequate diet leading to anemia or malnutrition and;

1. Nursing Tutor, AION

Fundamentals of Biology: A Comprehensive Guide

Fundamentals of Biology: A Comprehensive Guide

Editor

Prof. Jibin Varghese

VIBHAVARI PUBLICATION
DELHI

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Fundamentals of Biology: A Comprehensive Guide

Author : Prof. Jibin Varghese

Edition : 2021

ISBN : 978-93-84985-42-4

Published by :

Vibhavari Publication

Delhi

Exclusive Distributor

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,

Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,

Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by :

In-house

Preface

Overview

This comprehensive textbook is designed to provide a solid foundation in the fundamental principles of biology, covering a wide range of topics from the molecular level to the microbial world.

Key Topics

- **Biomolecules:**
 - Proteins: the building blocks of life, their structure, function, and classification.
 - Lipids: a diverse group of molecules, including fats, oils, and steroids.
 - Carbohydrates: energy sources and structural components of cells.
 - Vitamins: essential micronutrients for various bodily functions.
- **Cellular Metabolism:**
 - Glycolysis: the first step in cellular respiration, breaking down glucose for energy.
- **Microbiology:**
 - History of Microbiology: The evolution of our understanding of microorganisms.
 - Classification of Microorganisms: The diverse world of bacteria, archaea, fungi, protists, and viruses.
 - Microbial Staining: Techniques to visualize and identify microorganisms.
 - Bacterial Morphology: The various shapes and arrangements of bacteria.

- **Nutritional Biochemistry:**

- Nutritional Deficiency Disorders: the impact of inadequate nutrient intake on human health.

Target Audience

- Undergraduate biology students
- High school biology students
- Healthcare professionals
- Science enthusiasts

Unique Selling Points

- **Clear and Concise Explanations:** Easy-to-understand language and visual aids.
- **Real-World Applications:** Practical examples to illustrate key concepts.
- **Engaging Activities:** Interactive exercises and case studies.
- **Up-to-Date Information:** Current research and discoveries.
- **Comprehensive Coverage:** A wide range of topics, from molecular biology to microbiology.

Potential Chapters

1. Introduction to Biology
2. Biomolecules: The Building Blocks of Life
3. Cellular Metabolism: Energy for Life
4. Microbiology: The Study of Small Organisms
5. Nutritional Biochemistry: Fuelling the Body

This textbook aims to be a valuable resource for students and professionals alike, providing a solid foundation in the fundamental principles of biology.

— Editor

Contents

<i>Preface</i>	<i>iv</i>
1. Vitamins <i>Ms. Arti Dave</i>	1
2. Proteins <i>Ms. Arti Dave</i>	7
3. Proteins <i>Kanan Patel</i>	17
4. Glycolysis <i>Kanan Patel</i>	29
5. Lipids <i>Kanan Patel</i>	40
6. Carbohydrates <i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	49
7. Classification of Microorganisms <i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	59
8. History of Microbiology <i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	66
9. Microbial Staining <i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	81
10. Bacteria and Its Morphology <i>Ms. Salini</i>	96
11. Nutritional Deficiency Disorders <i>Ms. Salini</i>	104

1

Vitamins

Ms. Arti Dave¹

Water Soluble Vitamins

Introduction

Vitamins play a vital role in many biochemical functions in the human body and are essential components for maintaining optimal health. There are two main groups of vitamins – fat-soluble (easily stored in fat upon absorption) and water-soluble (washed out and not easily stored). Although adequate intake of all vitamins is important, regular intake is required to avoid deficiency due to the transient nature of water-soluble vitamins. The water-soluble vitamins include Vitamin C and Vitamin B complex (thiamine, riboflavin, niacin, pantothenic acid, pyridoxine, biotin, folate, and cobalamin).

Vitamin B complex and vitamin C are found in many foods, especially vegetables and fruits, as well as dairy, meat, legumes, peas, liver, eggs, and fortified grains and cereals. In addition to serving as cofactors in biochemical reactions, the vitamin B complex is vital for normal body growth and development, healthy skin, the proper function of nerves and the heart, and red blood cell formation. The overall lack of water-soluble vitamins is rare in North America, though it can present in alcohol use disorder, malabsorption syndromes, strict veganism, and malnourished states.

1. Nursing Tutor, AION

Fundamentals of Biology: A Comprehensive Guide

Fundamentals of Biology: A Comprehensive Guide

Editor

Prof. Jibin Varghese

VIBHAVARI PUBLICATION
DELHI

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Fundamentals of Biology: A Comprehensive Guide

Author : Prof. Jibin Varghese

Edition : 2021

ISBN : 978-93-84985-42-4

Published by :

Vibhavari Publication

Delhi

Exclusive Distributor

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,

Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,

Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by :

In-house

Preface

Overview

This comprehensive textbook is designed to provide a solid foundation in the fundamental principles of biology, covering a wide range of topics from the molecular level to the microbial world.

Key Topics

- **Biomolecules:**
 - Proteins: the building blocks of life, their structure, function, and classification.
 - Lipids: a diverse group of molecules, including fats, oils, and steroids.
 - Carbohydrates: energy sources and structural components of cells.
 - Vitamins: essential micronutrients for various bodily functions.
- **Cellular Metabolism:**
 - Glycolysis: the first step in cellular respiration, breaking down glucose for energy.
- **Microbiology:**
 - History of Microbiology: The evolution of our understanding of microorganisms.
 - Classification of Microorganisms: The diverse world of bacteria, archaea, fungi, protists, and viruses.
 - Microbial Staining: Techniques to visualize and identify microorganisms.
 - Bacterial Morphology: The various shapes and arrangements of bacteria.

- **Nutritional Biochemistry:**

- Nutritional Deficiency Disorders: the impact of inadequate nutrient intake on human health.

Target Audience

- Undergraduate biology students
- High school biology students
- Healthcare professionals
- Science enthusiasts

Unique Selling Points

- **Clear and Concise Explanations:** Easy-to-understand language and visual aids.
- **Real-World Applications:** Practical examples to illustrate key concepts.
- **Engaging Activities:** Interactive exercises and case studies.
- **Up-to-Date Information:** Current research and discoveries.
- **Comprehensive Coverage:** A wide range of topics, from molecular biology to microbiology.

Potential Chapters

1. Introduction to Biology
2. Biomolecules: The Building Blocks of Life
3. Cellular Metabolism: Energy for Life
4. Microbiology: The Study of Small Organisms
5. Nutritional Biochemistry: Fuelling the Body

This textbook aims to be a valuable resource for students and professionals alike, providing a solid foundation in the fundamental principles of biology.

— Editor

Contents

<i>Preface</i>	<i>iv</i>
1. Vitamins <i>Ms. Arti Dave</i>	1
2. Proteins <i>Ms. Arti Dave</i>	7
3. Proteins <i>Kanan Patel</i>	17
4. Glycolysis <i>Kanan Patel</i>	29
5. Lipids <i>Kanan Patel</i>	40
6. Carbohydrates <i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	49
7. Classification of Microorganisms <i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	59
8. History of Microbiology <i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	66
9. Microbial Staining <i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	81
10. Bacteria and Its Morphology <i>Ms. Salini</i>	96
11. Nutritional Deficiency Disorders <i>Ms. Salini</i>	104

2

Proteins

Ms. Arti Dave¹

Introduction

Vitamins are vital micronutrients that cannot be synthesized endogenously or in insufficient amounts, and the principal means by which we get vitamins is through our diet. Vitamins can be classified as water-soluble or fat-soluble. The fat-soluble vitamins include vitamins A, D, E, and K. Fat-soluble vitamins play integral roles in a multitude of physiological processes such as vision, bone health, immune function, and coagulation. This review discusses the biochemistry, transport, and roles of these vitamins, highlighting deficiency syndromes and potential toxicities.

Fundamentals

Sources of Vitamin A

In animals, the body stores vitamin A as a molecule called retinol. Egg yolk, milk, liver, cheese, and butter are all rich in vitamin A. We derive vitamin A from plant sources in the form of plant carotenoids, which convert to retinol during digestion. Plants abundant in vitamin A include dark green leafy vegetables (spinach, amaranth, among others), carrots, squash, yellow maize, mangoes, and papayas.

1. Nursing Tutor, AION

Fundamentals of Biology: A Comprehensive Guide

Fundamentals of Biology: A Comprehensive Guide

Editor

Prof. Jibin Varghese

VIBHAVARI PUBLICATION
DELHI

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Fundamentals of Biology: A Comprehensive Guide

Author : Prof. Jibin Varghese

Edition : 2021

ISBN : 978-93-84985-42-4

Published by :

Vibhavari Publication

Delhi

Exclusive Distributor

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,

Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,

Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by :

In-house

Preface

Overview

This comprehensive textbook is designed to provide a solid foundation in the fundamental principles of biology, covering a wide range of topics from the molecular level to the microbial world.

Key Topics

- **Biomolecules:**
 - Proteins: the building blocks of life, their structure, function, and classification.
 - Lipids: a diverse group of molecules, including fats, oils, and steroids.
 - Carbohydrates: energy sources and structural components of cells.
 - Vitamins: essential micronutrients for various bodily functions.
- **Cellular Metabolism:**
 - Glycolysis: the first step in cellular respiration, breaking down glucose for energy.
- **Microbiology:**
 - History of Microbiology: The evolution of our understanding of microorganisms.
 - Classification of Microorganisms: The diverse world of bacteria, archaea, fungi, protists, and viruses.
 - Microbial Staining: Techniques to visualize and identify microorganisms.
 - Bacterial Morphology: The various shapes and arrangements of bacteria.

- **Nutritional Biochemistry:**

- Nutritional Deficiency Disorders: the impact of inadequate nutrient intake on human health.

Target Audience

- Undergraduate biology students
- High school biology students
- Healthcare professionals
- Science enthusiasts

Unique Selling Points

- **Clear and Concise Explanations:** Easy-to-understand language and visual aids.
- **Real-World Applications:** Practical examples to illustrate key concepts.
- **Engaging Activities:** Interactive exercises and case studies.
- **Up-to-Date Information:** Current research and discoveries.
- **Comprehensive Coverage:** A wide range of topics, from molecular biology to microbiology.

Potential Chapters

1. Introduction to Biology
2. Biomolecules: The Building Blocks of Life
3. Cellular Metabolism: Energy for Life
4. Microbiology: The Study of Small Organisms
5. Nutritional Biochemistry: Fuelling the Body

This textbook aims to be a valuable resource for students and professionals alike, providing a solid foundation in the fundamental principles of biology.

— Editor

Contents

<i>Preface</i>	<i>iv</i>
1. Vitamins <i>Ms. Arti Dave</i>	1
2. Proteins <i>Ms. Arti Dave</i>	7
3. Proteins <i>Kanan Patel</i>	17
4. Glycolysis <i>Kanan Patel</i>	29
5. Lipids <i>Kanan Patel</i>	40
6. Carbohydrates <i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	49
7. Classification of Microorganisms <i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	59
8. History of Microbiology <i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	66
9. Microbial Staining <i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	81
10. Bacteria and Its Morphology <i>Ms. Salini</i>	96
11. Nutritional Deficiency Disorders <i>Ms. Salini</i>	104

3

Proteins

Kanan Patel¹

Introduction

Proteins are polypeptide structures consisting of 1 or more long chains of amino acid residues. They perform various organism functions, including DNA replication, transporting molecules, catalyzing metabolic reactions, and providing cell structural support. A protein can be identified based on each level of its structure. Every protein at least contains a primary, secondary, and tertiary structure. Only some proteins have a quaternary structure as well. The primary structure is comprised of a linear chain of amino acids. The secondary structure contains regions of amino acid chains that are stabilized by hydrogen bonds from the polypeptide backbone. These hydrogen bonds create alpha-helix and beta-pleated sheets of the secondary structure. The 3-dimensional shape of a protein, its tertiary structure, is determined by the interactions of side chains from the polypeptide backbone. The quaternary structure also influences the protein's 3-dimensional shape and is formed through the side-chain interactions between 2 or more polypeptides. Each protein at least contains a primary, secondary, and tertiary structure. Only some proteins have a quaternary structure as well.

Fundamentals

To reiterate, the primary structure of a protein is defined as the sequence of amino acids linked together to form a polypeptide chain. Each amino acid is linked to the next amino acid

1. Nursing Tutor, AION

Fundamentals of Biology: A Comprehensive Guide

Fundamentals of Biology: A Comprehensive Guide

Editor

Prof. Jibin Varghese

VIBHAVARI PUBLICATION
DELHI

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Fundamentals of Biology: A Comprehensive Guide

Author : Prof. Jibin Varghese

Edition : 2021

ISBN : 978-93-84985-42-4

Published by :

Vibhavari Publication

Delhi

Exclusive Distributor

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,

Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,

Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by :

In-house

Preface

Overview

This comprehensive textbook is designed to provide a solid foundation in the fundamental principles of biology, covering a wide range of topics from the molecular level to the microbial world.

Key Topics

- **Biomolecules:**
 - Proteins: the building blocks of life, their structure, function, and classification.
 - Lipids: a diverse group of molecules, including fats, oils, and steroids.
 - Carbohydrates: energy sources and structural components of cells.
 - Vitamins: essential micronutrients for various bodily functions.
- **Cellular Metabolism:**
 - Glycolysis: the first step in cellular respiration, breaking down glucose for energy.
- **Microbiology:**
 - History of Microbiology: The evolution of our understanding of microorganisms.
 - Classification of Microorganisms: The diverse world of bacteria, archaea, fungi, protists, and viruses.
 - Microbial Staining: Techniques to visualize and identify microorganisms.
 - Bacterial Morphology: The various shapes and arrangements of bacteria.

- **Nutritional Biochemistry:**

- Nutritional Deficiency Disorders: the impact of inadequate nutrient intake on human health.

Target Audience

- Undergraduate biology students
- High school biology students
- Healthcare professionals
- Science enthusiasts

Unique Selling Points

- **Clear and Concise Explanations:** Easy-to-understand language and visual aids.
- **Real-World Applications:** Practical examples to illustrate key concepts.
- **Engaging Activities:** Interactive exercises and case studies.
- **Up-to-Date Information:** Current research and discoveries.
- **Comprehensive Coverage:** A wide range of topics, from molecular biology to microbiology.

Potential Chapters

1. Introduction to Biology
2. Biomolecules: The Building Blocks of Life
3. Cellular Metabolism: Energy for Life
4. Microbiology: The Study of Small Organisms
5. Nutritional Biochemistry: Fuelling the Body

This textbook aims to be a valuable resource for students and professionals alike, providing a solid foundation in the fundamental principles of biology.

— Editor

Contents

<i>Preface</i>	<i>iv</i>
1. Vitamins <i>Ms. Arti Dave</i>	1
2. Proteins <i>Ms. Arti Dave</i>	7
3. Proteins <i>Kanan Patel</i>	17
4. Glycolysis <i>Kanan Patel</i>	29
5. Lipids <i>Kanan Patel</i>	40
6. Carbohydrates <i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	49
7. Classification of Microorganisms <i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	59
8. History of Microbiology <i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	66
9. Microbial Staining <i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	81
10. Bacteria and Its Morphology <i>Ms. Salini</i>	96
11. Nutritional Deficiency Disorders <i>Ms. Salini</i>	104

4

Glycolysis

Kanan Patel¹

■ INTRODUCTION

Glycolysis is a remote and conserved metabolic pathway, serving two main purposes in the cell: the production of high-energy molecules (adenosine triphosphate [ATP]/nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide) and intermediates for biosynthetic pathways.

This first step in glucose catabolism consists of sequential enzymatic reactions that are regulated at the level of three irreversible reactions that are coordinated by hexokinase (HK), phosphofructokinase 1 (PFK-1), and pyruvate kinase (PK).² PFK-1, the second metabolic valve, is the central controller that directs glucose toward glycolysis or the pentose phosphate pathway (PPP), and it has a specific and unique regulator, fructose-2,6-biphosphate (F2,6BP).

F2,6BP confers metabolic plasticity to cells by subverting the negative feedback of ATP on PFK-1 and stimulating glycolytic flow and lactate production even when these levels are already high.^{2,3,5} F2,6BP is the product of a collateral reaction in glycolysis, involving fructose-6-phosphate (F6P) and ATP, and it is mediated by the enzyme phosphofructokinase 2 (PFK-2).³ The reverse reaction is also possible but instead is mediated by fructose-2,6-bisphosphatase (F2,6BPase), generating fructose 6-phosphate and inorganic phosphate.³ Kinase/phosphatase reactions are catalyzed by a sole enzyme, 6-phosphofruc-

1. Nursing Tutor, AION

Fundamentals of Biology: A Comprehensive Guide

Fundamentals of Biology: A Comprehensive Guide

Editor

Prof. Jibin Varghese

VIBHAVARI PUBLICATION
DELHI

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Fundamentals of Biology: A Comprehensive Guide

Author : Prof. Jibin Varghese

Edition : 2021

ISBN : 978-93-84985-42-4

Published by :

Vibhavari Publication

Delhi

Exclusive Distributor

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,

Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,

Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by :

In-house

Preface

Overview

This comprehensive textbook is designed to provide a solid foundation in the fundamental principles of biology, covering a wide range of topics from the molecular level to the microbial world.

Key Topics

- **Biomolecules:**
 - Proteins: the building blocks of life, their structure, function, and classification.
 - Lipids: a diverse group of molecules, including fats, oils, and steroids.
 - Carbohydrates: energy sources and structural components of cells.
 - Vitamins: essential micronutrients for various bodily functions.
- **Cellular Metabolism:**
 - Glycolysis: the first step in cellular respiration, breaking down glucose for energy.
- **Microbiology:**
 - History of Microbiology: The evolution of our understanding of microorganisms.
 - Classification of Microorganisms: The diverse world of bacteria, archaea, fungi, protists, and viruses.
 - Microbial Staining: Techniques to visualize and identify microorganisms.
 - Bacterial Morphology: The various shapes and arrangements of bacteria.

- **Nutritional Biochemistry:**

- Nutritional Deficiency Disorders: the impact of inadequate nutrient intake on human health.

Target Audience

- Undergraduate biology students
- High school biology students
- Healthcare professionals
- Science enthusiasts

Unique Selling Points

- **Clear and Concise Explanations:** Easy-to-understand language and visual aids.
- **Real-World Applications:** Practical examples to illustrate key concepts.
- **Engaging Activities:** Interactive exercises and case studies.
- **Up-to-Date Information:** Current research and discoveries.
- **Comprehensive Coverage:** A wide range of topics, from molecular biology to microbiology.

Potential Chapters

1. Introduction to Biology
2. Biomolecules: The Building Blocks of Life
3. Cellular Metabolism: Energy for Life
4. Microbiology: The Study of Small Organisms
5. Nutritional Biochemistry: Fuelling the Body

This textbook aims to be a valuable resource for students and professionals alike, providing a solid foundation in the fundamental principles of biology.

— Editor

Contents

<i>Preface</i>	<i>iv</i>
1. Vitamins <i>Ms. Arti Dave</i>	1
2. Proteins <i>Ms. Arti Dave</i>	7
3. Proteins <i>Kanan Patel</i>	17
4. Glycolysis <i>Kanan Patel</i>	29
5. Lipids <i>Kanan Patel</i>	40
6. Carbohydrates <i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	49
7. Classification of Microorganisms <i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	59
8. History of Microbiology <i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	66
9. Microbial Staining <i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	81
10. Bacteria and Its Morphology <i>Ms. Salini</i>	96
11. Nutritional Deficiency Disorders <i>Ms. Salini</i>	104

5

Lipids

Kanan Patel¹

■ INTRODUCTION

Fats and lipids are an essential component of the homeostatic function of the human body. Lipids contribute to some of the body's most vital processes.

Lipids are fatty, waxy, or oily compounds that are soluble in organic solvents and insoluble in polar solvents such as water. Lipids include:

- Fats and oils (triglycerides)
- Phospholipids
- Waxes
- Steroids

FUNDAMENTALS

Fats and oils are esters made up of glycerol (a 3-carbon sugar alcohol/polyol) and 3 fatty acids. Fatty acids are hydrocarbon chains of differing lengths with various degrees of saturation that end with carboxylic acid groups. Additionally, fatty acid double bonds can either be *cis* or *trans*, creating many different types of fatty acids. Fatty acids in biological systems usually contain an even number of carbon atoms and are typically 14 carbons to 24 carbons long. Triglycerides store energy, provide insulation to cells, and aid in the absorption of fat-soluble vitamins. Fats are normally solid at room temperature, while oils are generally liquid.

1. Nursing Tutor, AION

Fundamentals of Biology: A Comprehensive Guide

Fundamentals of Biology: A Comprehensive Guide

Editor

Prof. Jibin Varghese

VIBHAVARI PUBLICATION
DELHI

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Fundamentals of Biology: A Comprehensive Guide

Author : Prof. Jibin Varghese

Edition : 2021

ISBN : 978-93-84985-42-4

Published by :

Vibhavari Publication

Delhi

Exclusive Distributor

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,

Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,

Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by :

In-house

Preface

Overview

This comprehensive textbook is designed to provide a solid foundation in the fundamental principles of biology, covering a wide range of topics from the molecular level to the microbial world.

Key Topics

- **Biomolecules:**
 - Proteins: the building blocks of life, their structure, function, and classification.
 - Lipids: a diverse group of molecules, including fats, oils, and steroids.
 - Carbohydrates: energy sources and structural components of cells.
 - Vitamins: essential micronutrients for various bodily functions.
- **Cellular Metabolism:**
 - Glycolysis: the first step in cellular respiration, breaking down glucose for energy.
- **Microbiology:**
 - History of Microbiology: The evolution of our understanding of microorganisms.
 - Classification of Microorganisms: The diverse world of bacteria, archaea, fungi, protists, and viruses.
 - Microbial Staining: Techniques to visualize and identify microorganisms.
 - Bacterial Morphology: The various shapes and arrangements of bacteria.

- **Nutritional Biochemistry:**

- Nutritional Deficiency Disorders: the impact of inadequate nutrient intake on human health.

Target Audience

- Undergraduate biology students
- High school biology students
- Healthcare professionals
- Science enthusiasts

Unique Selling Points

- **Clear and Concise Explanations:** Easy-to-understand language and visual aids.
- **Real-World Applications:** Practical examples to illustrate key concepts.
- **Engaging Activities:** Interactive exercises and case studies.
- **Up-to-Date Information:** Current research and discoveries.
- **Comprehensive Coverage:** A wide range of topics, from molecular biology to microbiology.

Potential Chapters

1. Introduction to Biology
2. Biomolecules: The Building Blocks of Life
3. Cellular Metabolism: Energy for Life
4. Microbiology: The Study of Small Organisms
5. Nutritional Biochemistry: Fuelling the Body

This textbook aims to be a valuable resource for students and professionals alike, providing a solid foundation in the fundamental principles of biology.

— Editor

Contents

<i>Preface</i>	<i>iv</i>
1. Vitamins <i>Ms. Arti Dave</i>	1
2. Proteins <i>Ms. Arti Dave</i>	7
3. Proteins <i>Kanan Patel</i>	17
4. Glycolysis <i>Kanan Patel</i>	29
5. Lipids <i>Kanan Patel</i>	40
6. Carbohydrates <i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	49
7. Classification of Microorganisms <i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	59
8. History of Microbiology <i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	66
9. Microbial Staining <i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	81
10. Bacteria and Its Morphology <i>Ms. Salini</i>	96
11. Nutritional Deficiency Disorders <i>Ms. Salini</i>	104

6

Carbohydrates

Ms Jinal Patel¹

■ INTRODUCTION

Carbohydrates are a class of naturally occurring organic compounds of carbon, hydrogen and oxygen which are primarily produced by plants. They are extremely widespread in plants comprising upto 80% of dry weight. These are ultimate source of our food. In higher animals the simple sugar glucose is an essential constituent of blood and occurs in a polymeric form as glycogen in the liver and muscle.

In the green plants, carbohydrates are produced by a process called photosynthesis. This process involves the conversion of simple compounds CO₂ and H₂O into glucose (C₆H₁₂O₆) and is catalysed by green colouring pigment chlorophyll present in the leaves of plants. The energy required for this conversion is supplied by sun in the form of sunlight.

Carbohydrates are very useful for human beings. They provide us all the three basic necessities of life i.e., food (starch containing grain), clothes (cellulose in the form of cotton, linen and rayon) and shelter (cellulose in the form of wood used for making our houses and furniture etc.). Carbohydrates are also important to the economy of many nations. For example, sugar is one of the most important commercial commodities.

The term carbohydrates arose because the general formula for most of them could be written as C_x (H₂O)_y and thus they may be regarded as hydrates of carbon. However, this defini-

1. Nursing Tutor, AION

Fundamentals of Biology: A Comprehensive Guide

Fundamentals of Biology: A Comprehensive Guide

Editor

Prof. Jibin Varghese

VIBHAVARI PUBLICATION
DELHI

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Fundamentals of Biology: A Comprehensive Guide

Author : Prof. Jibin Varghese

Edition : 2021

ISBN : 978-93-84985-42-4

Published by :

Vibhavari Publication

Delhi

Exclusive Distributor

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,

Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,

Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by :

In-house

Preface

Overview

This comprehensive textbook is designed to provide a solid foundation in the fundamental principles of biology, covering a wide range of topics from the molecular level to the microbial world.

Key Topics

- **Biomolecules:**
 - Proteins: the building blocks of life, their structure, function, and classification.
 - Lipids: a diverse group of molecules, including fats, oils, and steroids.
 - Carbohydrates: energy sources and structural components of cells.
 - Vitamins: essential micronutrients for various bodily functions.
- **Cellular Metabolism:**
 - Glycolysis: the first step in cellular respiration, breaking down glucose for energy.
- **Microbiology:**
 - History of Microbiology: The evolution of our understanding of microorganisms.
 - Classification of Microorganisms: The diverse world of bacteria, archaea, fungi, protists, and viruses.
 - Microbial Staining: Techniques to visualize and identify microorganisms.
 - Bacterial Morphology: The various shapes and arrangements of bacteria.

- **Nutritional Biochemistry:**

- Nutritional Deficiency Disorders: the impact of inadequate nutrient intake on human health.

Target Audience

- Undergraduate biology students
- High school biology students
- Healthcare professionals
- Science enthusiasts

Unique Selling Points

- **Clear and Concise Explanations:** Easy-to-understand language and visual aids.
- **Real-World Applications:** Practical examples to illustrate key concepts.
- **Engaging Activities:** Interactive exercises and case studies.
- **Up-to-Date Information:** Current research and discoveries.
- **Comprehensive Coverage:** A wide range of topics, from molecular biology to microbiology.

Potential Chapters

1. Introduction to Biology
2. Biomolecules: The Building Blocks of Life
3. Cellular Metabolism: Energy for Life
4. Microbiology: The Study of Small Organisms
5. Nutritional Biochemistry: Fuelling the Body

This textbook aims to be a valuable resource for students and professionals alike, providing a solid foundation in the fundamental principles of biology.

— Editor

Contents

<i>Preface</i>	<i>iv</i>
1. Vitamins <i>Ms. Arti Dave</i>	1
2. Proteins <i>Ms. Arti Dave</i>	7
3. Proteins <i>Kanan Patel</i>	17
4. Glycolysis <i>Kanan Patel</i>	29
5. Lipids <i>Kanan Patel</i>	40
6. Carbohydrates <i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	49
7. Classification of Microorganisms <i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	59
8. History of Microbiology <i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	66
9. Microbial Staining <i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	81
10. Bacteria and Its Morphology <i>Ms. Salini</i>	96
11. Nutritional Deficiency Disorders <i>Ms. Salini</i>	104

7

Classification of Microorganisms

Ms Jinal Patel¹

■ INTRODUCTION

All organisms that are very small or microscopic in size, and cannot be seen with the naked eye are referred to as microorganisms. Microorganisms are visible under the microscope. Anton van Leeuwenhoek first observed microorganisms under the microscope. Microorganisms include bacteria, archaea, algae, fungi, protozoa, etc. Although viruses are not considered living organisms, sometimes they are also included in the microorganisms category.

Classification is the process by which organisms are grouped into various categories based on morphological and physiological characteristics. There have been various attempts to classify organisms based on their morphological, physiological, cellular and molecular characteristics. Modern classification is also based on evolutionary relationships i.e. phylogenetic relationships.

Microorganisms are prokaryotic, such as bacteria, archaea, etc., as well as eukaryotic, such as protozoa, algae, fungi, etc. R.H. Whittaker elucidated the Five Kingdom Classification, which was based on the following characteristics:

CELL TYPE (PROKARYOTIC AND EUKARYOTIC) AND PRESENCE OF NUCLEAR MEMBRANE

Presence of cell wall and its constituents

Body organisation

Mode of nutrition

1. Nursing Tutor, AION

Fundamentals of Biology: A Comprehensive Guide

Fundamentals of Biology: A Comprehensive Guide

Editor

Prof. Jibin Varghese

VIBHAVARI PUBLICATION
DELHI

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Fundamentals of Biology: A Comprehensive Guide

Author : Prof. Jibin Varghese

Edition : 2021

ISBN : 978-93-84985-42-4

Published by :

Vibhavari Publication

Delhi

Exclusive Distributor

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,

Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,

Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by :

In-house

Preface

Overview

This comprehensive textbook is designed to provide a solid foundation in the fundamental principles of biology, covering a wide range of topics from the molecular level to the microbial world.

Key Topics

- **Biomolecules:**
 - Proteins: the building blocks of life, their structure, function, and classification.
 - Lipids: a diverse group of molecules, including fats, oils, and steroids.
 - Carbohydrates: energy sources and structural components of cells.
 - Vitamins: essential micronutrients for various bodily functions.
- **Cellular Metabolism:**
 - Glycolysis: the first step in cellular respiration, breaking down glucose for energy.
- **Microbiology:**
 - History of Microbiology: The evolution of our understanding of microorganisms.
 - Classification of Microorganisms: The diverse world of bacteria, archaea, fungi, protists, and viruses.
 - Microbial Staining: Techniques to visualize and identify microorganisms.
 - Bacterial Morphology: The various shapes and arrangements of bacteria.

- **Nutritional Biochemistry:**

- Nutritional Deficiency Disorders: the impact of inadequate nutrient intake on human health.

Target Audience

- Undergraduate biology students
- High school biology students
- Healthcare professionals
- Science enthusiasts

Unique Selling Points

- **Clear and Concise Explanations:** Easy-to-understand language and visual aids.
- **Real-World Applications:** Practical examples to illustrate key concepts.
- **Engaging Activities:** Interactive exercises and case studies.
- **Up-to-Date Information:** Current research and discoveries.
- **Comprehensive Coverage:** A wide range of topics, from molecular biology to microbiology.

Potential Chapters

1. Introduction to Biology
2. Biomolecules: The Building Blocks of Life
3. Cellular Metabolism: Energy for Life
4. Microbiology: The Study of Small Organisms
5. Nutritional Biochemistry: Fuelling the Body

This textbook aims to be a valuable resource for students and professionals alike, providing a solid foundation in the fundamental principles of biology.

— Editor

Contents

<i>Preface</i>	<i>iv</i>
1. Vitamins <i>Ms. Arti Dave</i>	1
2. Proteins <i>Ms. Arti Dave</i>	7
3. Proteins <i>Kanan Patel</i>	17
4. Glycolysis <i>Kanan Patel</i>	29
5. Lipids <i>Kanan Patel</i>	40
6. Carbohydrates <i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	49
7. Classification of Microorganisms <i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	59
8. History of Microbiology <i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	66
9. Microbial Staining <i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	81
10. Bacteria and Its Morphology <i>Ms. Salini</i>	96
11. Nutritional Deficiency Disorders <i>Ms. Salini</i>	104

8

History of Microbiology

Ms Jinal Patel¹

MICROBIOLOGY

Study of microorganisms, or microbes, a diverse group of generally minute simple life-forms that include bacteria, archaea, algae, fungi, protozoa, and viruses. The field is concerned with the structure, function, and classification of such organisms and with ways of both exploiting and controlling their activities.

The 17th-century discovery of living forms existing invisible to the naked eye was a significant milestone in the history of science, for from the 13th century onward it had been postulated that “invisible” entities were responsible for decay and disease. The word microbe was coined in the last quarter of the 19th century to describe these organisms, all of which were thought to be related. As microbiology eventually developed into a specialized science, it was found that microbes are a very large group of extremely diverse organisms.

Daily life is interwoven inextricably with microorganisms. In addition to populating both the inner and outer surfaces of the human body, microbes abound in the soil, in the seas, and in the air. Abundant, although usually unnoticed, microorganisms provide ample evidence of their presence—sometimes unfavourably, as when they cause decay of materials or spread diseases, and sometimes favourably, as when they ferment sugar to wine and beer, cause bread to rise, flavour cheeses, and produce valued products such as antibiotics and insulin.

1. Nursing Tutor, AION

9

Microbial Staining

Ms Jinal Patel¹

Staining refers to the use of colored dyes/stains to make cells and/or cellular structures visible or to produce contrast between different types of cells/cellular components. i.e. it enhances the contrast of a microscopic image.

Staining allows visualization of cells and cellular components; it also allows differentiation of different cell types or different cellular organelles. It is important in the detection of microbes in a medium, ie, blood. It is also very vital in the medical diagnosis of infections, Staining techniques may either involve a single stain, intended to point out cells cellular components (simple staining) or multiple stains to differentiate between different cells/cellular components (differential staining).

Stains

Stains are coloured organic compounds (salts) used for staining cells, tissues. Microorganisms, etc. Stains contain ions which impart them color, these ions are called chromophore. If the chromophore is a positive ion, then the dye/stain is called a basic stain and if it is negative, then the dye/stain is known as acidic stain, According to pH, stains can be classified into

Acidic Stains: These stains have a negative charge, hence they bind to positively charged cellular structures like some proteins. Acidic dyes are not very often used in a microbiology lab, except to provide background staining like in negative

1. Nursing Tutor, AION

Fundamentals of Biology: A Comprehensive Guide

Fundamentals of Biology: A Comprehensive Guide

Editor

Prof. Jibin Varghese

VIBHAVARI PUBLICATION
DELHI

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Fundamentals of Biology: A Comprehensive Guide

Author : Prof. Jibin Varghese

Edition : 2021

ISBN : 978-93-84985-42-4

Published by :

Vibhavari Publication

Delhi

Exclusive Distributor

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,

Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,

Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by :

In-house

Preface

Overview

This comprehensive textbook is designed to provide a solid foundation in the fundamental principles of biology, covering a wide range of topics from the molecular level to the microbial world.

Key Topics

- **Biomolecules:**
 - Proteins: the building blocks of life, their structure, function, and classification.
 - Lipids: a diverse group of molecules, including fats, oils, and steroids.
 - Carbohydrates: energy sources and structural components of cells.
 - Vitamins: essential micronutrients for various bodily functions.
- **Cellular Metabolism:**
 - Glycolysis: the first step in cellular respiration, breaking down glucose for energy.
- **Microbiology:**
 - History of Microbiology: The evolution of our understanding of microorganisms.
 - Classification of Microorganisms: The diverse world of bacteria, archaea, fungi, protists, and viruses.
 - Microbial Staining: Techniques to visualize and identify microorganisms.
 - Bacterial Morphology: The various shapes and arrangements of bacteria.

- **Nutritional Biochemistry:**

- Nutritional Deficiency Disorders: the impact of inadequate nutrient intake on human health.

Target Audience

- Undergraduate biology students
- High school biology students
- Healthcare professionals
- Science enthusiasts

Unique Selling Points

- **Clear and Concise Explanations:** Easy-to-understand language and visual aids.
- **Real-World Applications:** Practical examples to illustrate key concepts.
- **Engaging Activities:** Interactive exercises and case studies.
- **Up-to-Date Information:** Current research and discoveries.
- **Comprehensive Coverage:** A wide range of topics, from molecular biology to microbiology.

Potential Chapters

1. Introduction to Biology
2. Biomolecules: The Building Blocks of Life
3. Cellular Metabolism: Energy for Life
4. Microbiology: The Study of Small Organisms
5. Nutritional Biochemistry: Fuelling the Body

This textbook aims to be a valuable resource for students and professionals alike, providing a solid foundation in the fundamental principles of biology.

— Editor

Contents

<i>Preface</i>	<i>iv</i>
1. Vitamins <i>Ms. Arti Dave</i>	1
2. Proteins <i>Ms. Arti Dave</i>	7
3. Proteins <i>Kanan Patel</i>	17
4. Glycolysis <i>Kanan Patel</i>	29
5. Lipids <i>Kanan Patel</i>	40
6. Carbohydrates <i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	49
7. Classification of Microorganisms <i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	59
8. History of Microbiology <i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	66
9. Microbial Staining <i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	81
10. Bacteria and Its Morphology <i>Ms. Salini</i>	96
11. Nutritional Deficiency Disorders <i>Ms. Salini</i>	104

10

Bacteria and Its Morphology

Ms. Salini¹

Bacteria are microscopic, unicellular, prokaryotic organisms. They do not have membrane-bound cell organelles and lack a true **nucleus**, hence are grouped under the domain “**Prokaryota**” together with *Archae*.

In a three-domain system, Bacteria is the largest domain. (Living beings are classified into *Archae*, *Bacteria*, and *Eukaryota* domain in the three-domain system.)

Bacteria, a singular bacterium, is derived from the Ancient Greek word “*backērion*” meaning “**cane**”, as the first bacteria observed were bacilli.

The study of ‘Bacteria’ is called ‘**Bacteriology**’

Evolution of Bacteria

Bacteria are considered as the first life-form to arise on the Earth about 4 billion years ago. All other life-forms are evolved from the bacteria.

Ecology (Habitat) of Bacteria

Bacteria are evolved to adapt and survive in any kind of ecological niches; from normal to extreme environments. Hence, they are ubiquitous.

They are not only in normal ecological habitats but are also found in extreme environments. Such bacteria are called **extremophilic** bacteria.

1. Nursing Tutor, AION

Fundamentals of Biology: A Comprehensive Guide

Fundamentals of Biology: A Comprehensive Guide

Editor

Prof. Jibin Varghese

VIBHAVARI PUBLICATION
DELHI

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Fundamentals of Biology: A Comprehensive Guide

Author : Prof. Jibin Varghese

Edition : 2021

ISBN : 978-93-84985-42-4

Published by :

Vibhavari Publication

Delhi

Exclusive Distributor

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,

Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,

Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by :

In-house

Preface

Overview

This comprehensive textbook is designed to provide a solid foundation in the fundamental principles of biology, covering a wide range of topics from the molecular level to the microbial world.

Key Topics

- **Biomolecules:**
 - Proteins: the building blocks of life, their structure, function, and classification.
 - Lipids: a diverse group of molecules, including fats, oils, and steroids.
 - Carbohydrates: energy sources and structural components of cells.
 - Vitamins: essential micronutrients for various bodily functions.
- **Cellular Metabolism:**
 - Glycolysis: the first step in cellular respiration, breaking down glucose for energy.
- **Microbiology:**
 - History of Microbiology: The evolution of our understanding of microorganisms.
 - Classification of Microorganisms: The diverse world of bacteria, archaea, fungi, protists, and viruses.
 - Microbial Staining: Techniques to visualize and identify microorganisms.
 - Bacterial Morphology: The various shapes and arrangements of bacteria.

- **Nutritional Biochemistry:**

- Nutritional Deficiency Disorders: the impact of inadequate nutrient intake on human health.

Target Audience

- Undergraduate biology students
- High school biology students
- Healthcare professionals
- Science enthusiasts

Unique Selling Points

- **Clear and Concise Explanations:** Easy-to-understand language and visual aids.
- **Real-World Applications:** Practical examples to illustrate key concepts.
- **Engaging Activities:** Interactive exercises and case studies.
- **Up-to-Date Information:** Current research and discoveries.
- **Comprehensive Coverage:** A wide range of topics, from molecular biology to microbiology.

Potential Chapters

1. Introduction to Biology
2. Biomolecules: The Building Blocks of Life
3. Cellular Metabolism: Energy for Life
4. Microbiology: The Study of Small Organisms
5. Nutritional Biochemistry: Fuelling the Body

This textbook aims to be a valuable resource for students and professionals alike, providing a solid foundation in the fundamental principles of biology.

— Editor

Contents

<i>Preface</i>	<i>iv</i>
1. Vitamins <i>Ms. Arti Dave</i>	1
2. Proteins <i>Ms. Arti Dave</i>	7
3. Proteins <i>Kanan Patel</i>	17
4. Glycolysis <i>Kanan Patel</i>	29
5. Lipids <i>Kanan Patel</i>	40
6. Carbohydrates <i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	49
7. Classification of Microorganisms <i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	59
8. History of Microbiology <i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	66
9. Microbial Staining <i>Ms Jinal Patel</i>	81
10. Bacteria and Its Morphology <i>Ms. Salini</i>	96
11. Nutritional Deficiency Disorders <i>Ms. Salini</i>	104

11

Nutritional Deficiency Disorders

Ms. Salini¹

Nutritional Deficiencies

Nutritional deficiencies occur when the quantity or quality of food is not sufficient to meet a person's needs.

This may be caused by not having enough food to eat or by infections with bacteria, viruses or parasites.

Infections can increase people's nutrient requirements and reduce their appetite.

Nutritional deficiencies lead to malnutrition.

There are several types of malnutrition:

Protein Energy Malnutrition (PEM) can lead to acute thinness (wasting) or a long term reduction in child growth (stunting). When the PEM is severe it can lead to Marasmus or Kwashiorkor. Usually this type of malnutrition is caused by a deficiency in both macronutrients and micronutrients.

Micronutrient Malnutrition can occur even if the person is getting enough energy and they are not thin or short. It is usually caused by a deficiency in one or a small number of specific micronutrients.

Micronutrient Deficiency Disease

Diseases such as anemia, scurvy and pellagra are caused by deficiencies in micronutrients. They can be very serious and people can die as a result.

1. Nursing Tutor, AION

Neonatal's Nursing

NEONATAL'S NURSING

Editor

Prof. Sejal Patel

**SHRADDHA BOOK DISTRIBUTORS
AYODHYA**

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Neonatal's Nursing

Editor : Prof. Sejal Patel

Edition : 2021

ISBN : 978-81-932110-5-2

Published by:

Shraddha Book Distributors

Ayodhya 224 001

Exclusive Distributor:

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,

Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,

Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by:

In-house

Preface

This compendium delves into a range of critical health conditions, from the delicate realm of neonatal care to the intricate challenges faced by pediatric patients. Each chapter is meticulously crafted to provide a comprehensive overview, exploring the underlying causes, clinical manifestations, and state-of-the-art management strategies.

We begin by examining common neonatal problems, a crucial area for healthcare providers. Understanding the unique physiological adaptations of newborns is essential for early identification and timely intervention. From respiratory distress syndrome to neonatal jaundice, these conditions can have profound implications for infant health and development.

Subsequently, we turn our attention to specific pediatric disorders. Turner syndrome, a chromosomal condition affecting females, is explored in detail, highlighting its diverse clinical presentation and the importance of early diagnosis and management. Spina bifida, a neural tube defect, and thalassemia, a group of inherited blood disorders, are discussed, emphasizing the need for multidisciplinary care and ongoing support.

The complexities of renal failure in pediatric patients are also addressed. This chapter delves into the various etiologies, diagnostic approaches, and therapeutic interventions, including dialysis and transplantation.

In the realm of patient safety, we examine key patient safety indicators that are crucial for monitoring the quality of care. By understanding these indicators, healthcare providers can identify potential risks and implement strategies to improve patient outcomes.

Finally, we explore two common pediatric conditions: otitis media and nephrotic syndrome. Otitis media, a frequent ear infection, can lead to significant morbidity and hearing loss. Nephrotic syndrome, a kidney disorder characterized by excessive protein loss in the urine, can have a profound impact on a child's overall health.

This compendium is intended to serve as a valuable resource for healthcare professionals, students, and researchers. It is our hope that this work will contribute to the advancement of pediatric and neonatal care, ultimately improving the lives of affected children.

—Editor

Contents

<i>Preface</i>	<i>v</i>
1. Nursing Resuscitation	1
<i>Ms. Vishva Patel</i>	
2. Common Neonatal Problems	15
<i>Ms. Vishva Patel</i>	
3. Turner Syndrome	25
<i>Ms. Vishva Patel</i>	
4. Spina Bifida	42
<i>Mr. Rajkumar</i>	
5. Thalassemia	63
<i>Mr. Rajkumar</i>	
6. Renal Failure	79
<i>Mr. Rajkumar</i>	
7. Patient Safety Indicators	93
<i>Ms. Megha Raval</i>	
8. Otitis Media	98
<i>Ms. Megha Raval</i>	
9. Nephrotic Syndrome	118
<i>Ms. Megha Raval</i>	

Neonatal's Nursing

NEONATAL'S NURSING

Editor

Prof. Sejal Patel

SHRADDHA BOOK DISTRIBUTORS
AYODHYA

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Neonatal's Nursing

Editor : Prof. Sejal Patel

Edition : 2021

ISBN : 978-81-932110-5-2

Published by:

Shraddha Book Distributors

Ayodhya 224 001

Exclusive Distributor:

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,

Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,

Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by:

In-house

Preface

This compendium delves into a range of critical health conditions, from the delicate realm of neonatal care to the intricate challenges faced by pediatric patients. Each chapter is meticulously crafted to provide a comprehensive overview, exploring the underlying causes, clinical manifestations, and state-of-the-art management strategies.

We begin by examining common neonatal problems, a crucial area for healthcare providers. Understanding the unique physiological adaptations of newborns is essential for early identification and timely intervention. From respiratory distress syndrome to neonatal jaundice, these conditions can have profound implications for infant health and development.

Subsequently, we turn our attention to specific pediatric disorders. Turner syndrome, a chromosomal condition affecting females, is explored in detail, highlighting its diverse clinical presentation and the importance of early diagnosis and management. Spina bifida, a neural tube defect, and thalassemia, a group of inherited blood disorders, are discussed, emphasizing the need for multidisciplinary care and ongoing support.

The complexities of renal failure in pediatric patients are also addressed. This chapter delves into the various etiologies, diagnostic approaches, and therapeutic interventions, including dialysis and transplantation.

In the realm of patient safety, we examine key patient safety indicators that are crucial for monitoring the quality of care. By understanding these indicators, healthcare providers can identify potential risks and implement strategies to improve patient outcomes.

Finally, we explore two common pediatric conditions: otitis media and nephrotic syndrome. Otitis media, a frequent ear infection, can lead to significant morbidity and hearing loss. Nephrotic syndrome, a kidney disorder characterized by excessive protein loss in the urine, can have a profound impact on a child's overall health.

This compendium is intended to serve as a valuable resource for healthcare professionals, students, and researchers. It is our hope that this work will contribute to the advancement of pediatric and neonatal care, ultimately improving the lives of affected children.

—Editor

Contents

<i>Preface</i>	<i>v</i>
1. Nursing Resuscitation	1
<i>Ms. Vishva Patel</i>	
2. Common Neonatal Problems	15
<i>Ms. Vishva Patel</i>	
3. Turner Syndrome	25
<i>Ms. Vishva Patel</i>	
4. Spina Bifida	42
<i>Mr. Rajkumar</i>	
5. Thalassemia	63
<i>Mr. Rajkumar</i>	
6. Renal Failure	79
<i>Mr. Rajkumar</i>	
7. Patient Safety Indicators	93
<i>Ms. Megha Raval</i>	
8. Otitis Media	98
<i>Ms. Megha Raval</i>	
9. Nephrotic Syndrome	118
<i>Ms. Megha Raval</i>	

1

Nursing Resuscitation

Ms. Vishva Patel¹

INTRODUCTION

Hypoxic arrest is the most common cause of cardiac arrest in infants, children and adolescents. It is the end result of progressive tissue hypoxia and acidosis caused by respiratory failure or hypotensive shock. Regardless of the initiating event or disease process, the final common pathway preceding cardiac arrest is cardiopulmonary failure. It is important for all health workers caring for children to know about the fundamental steps in resuscitation and be prepared to implement resuscitation on an immediate basis. The goal of pediatric resuscitation is to maintain adequate oxygenation and perfusion of blood throughout the body while steps are taken to stabilize the child.

Survival Rates from Pediatric Cardiac Arrest: Survival rates vary according to the location of the arrest and the presenting rhythm. Survival is higher if the arrest occurs in hospital (43%) compared with out of hospital (8%). Intact neurologic survival is also much higher if the arrest occurs in hospital. Basic life support (BLS) emphasizes immediate provision of bystander CPR.

Objectives

- To be able to give efficient pediatric BLS
- To be able to provide efficient Pediatric advanced life support
- To be able to identify different cardiac rhythms.

1. Nursing Tutor, AION

Neonatal's Nursing

NEONATAL'S NURSING

Editor

Prof. Sejal Patel

SHRADDHA BOOK DISTRIBUTORS
AYODHYA

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Neonatal's Nursing

Editor : Prof. Sejal Patel

Edition : 2021

ISBN : 978-81-932110-5-2

Published by:

Shraddha Book Distributors

Ayodhya 224 001

Exclusive Distributor:

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,

Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,

Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by:

In-house

Preface

This compendium delves into a range of critical health conditions, from the delicate realm of neonatal care to the intricate challenges faced by pediatric patients. Each chapter is meticulously crafted to provide a comprehensive overview, exploring the underlying causes, clinical manifestations, and state-of-the-art management strategies.

We begin by examining common neonatal problems, a crucial area for healthcare providers. Understanding the unique physiological adaptations of newborns is essential for early identification and timely intervention. From respiratory distress syndrome to neonatal jaundice, these conditions can have profound implications for infant health and development.

Subsequently, we turn our attention to specific pediatric disorders. Turner syndrome, a chromosomal condition affecting females, is explored in detail, highlighting its diverse clinical presentation and the importance of early diagnosis and management. Spina bifida, a neural tube defect, and thalassemia, a group of inherited blood disorders, are discussed, emphasizing the need for multidisciplinary care and ongoing support.

The complexities of renal failure in pediatric patients are also addressed. This chapter delves into the various etiologies, diagnostic approaches, and therapeutic interventions, including dialysis and transplantation.

In the realm of patient safety, we examine key patient safety indicators that are crucial for monitoring the quality of care. By understanding these indicators, healthcare providers can identify potential risks and implement strategies to improve patient outcomes.

Finally, we explore two common pediatric conditions: otitis media and nephrotic syndrome. Otitis media, a frequent ear infection, can lead to significant morbidity and hearing loss. Nephrotic syndrome, a kidney disorder characterized by excessive protein loss in the urine, can have a profound impact on a child's overall health.

This compendium is intended to serve as a valuable resource for healthcare professionals, students, and researchers. It is our hope that this work will contribute to the advancement of pediatric and neonatal care, ultimately improving the lives of affected children.

—Editor

Contents

<i>Preface</i>	<i>v</i>
1. Nursing Resuscitation	1
<i>Ms. Vishva Patel</i>	
2. Common Neonatal Problems	15
<i>Ms. Vishva Patel</i>	
3. Turner Syndrome	25
<i>Ms. Vishva Patel</i>	
4. Spina Bifida	42
<i>Mr. Rajkumar</i>	
5. Thalassemia	63
<i>Mr. Rajkumar</i>	
6. Renal Failure	79
<i>Mr. Rajkumar</i>	
7. Patient Safety Indicators	93
<i>Ms. Megha Raval</i>	
8. Otitis Media	98
<i>Ms. Megha Raval</i>	
9. Nephrotic Syndrome	118
<i>Ms. Megha Raval</i>	

2

Common Neonatal Problems

Ms. Vishva Patel¹

INTRODUCTION

Majority of newborn babies do not develop any serious disorders and they need routine newborn care which can be provided by the mothers under nurse's supervision. High risk mothers are likely to give birth to preterm or low birth weight babies who are prone to suffer from a number of disorders. Common causes of morbidity in newborn babies include hypoglycemia, shock, RDS, jaundice, neonatal sepsis, and neonatal seizures. Most neonatal disorders are limited to preterm and low birth weight babies. In this unit, common neonatal disorders such as hypoglycemia, RDS, shock, jaundice, neonatal sepsis, neonatal seizures and monitoring of sick neonate are being discussed. Hence you will learn about the definition, causes, pathogenesis, types, signs and symptoms, diagnosis and management of these disorders. You will also learn about how to monitor a sick neonate.

HYPOGLYCEMIA

Definition: Hypoglycemia is defined as a blood glucose level of less than 45 mg/dl in all newborns. Low birth weight and sick neonates are prone to develop low blood sugar which increases morbidity and mortality. It is important to monitor, diagnose and treat hypoglycemia early for a favorable outcome.

Neonates at Risk:-

1. Nursing Tutor, AION

Neonatal's Nursing

NEONATAL'S NURSING

Editor

Prof. Sejal Patel

SHRADDHA BOOK DISTRIBUTORS
AYODHYA

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Neonatal's Nursing

Editor : Prof. Sejal Patel

Edition : 2021

ISBN : 978-81-932110-5-2

Published by:

Shraddha Book Distributors

Ayodhya 224 001

Exclusive Distributor:

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,

Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,

Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by:

In-house

Preface

This compendium delves into a range of critical health conditions, from the delicate realm of neonatal care to the intricate challenges faced by pediatric patients. Each chapter is meticulously crafted to provide a comprehensive overview, exploring the underlying causes, clinical manifestations, and state-of-the-art management strategies.

We begin by examining common neonatal problems, a crucial area for healthcare providers. Understanding the unique physiological adaptations of newborns is essential for early identification and timely intervention. From respiratory distress syndrome to neonatal jaundice, these conditions can have profound implications for infant health and development.

Subsequently, we turn our attention to specific pediatric disorders. Turner syndrome, a chromosomal condition affecting females, is explored in detail, highlighting its diverse clinical presentation and the importance of early diagnosis and management. Spina bifida, a neural tube defect, and thalassemia, a group of inherited blood disorders, are discussed, emphasizing the need for multidisciplinary care and ongoing support.

The complexities of renal failure in pediatric patients are also addressed. This chapter delves into the various etiologies, diagnostic approaches, and therapeutic interventions, including dialysis and transplantation.

In the realm of patient safety, we examine key patient safety indicators that are crucial for monitoring the quality of care. By understanding these indicators, healthcare providers can identify potential risks and implement strategies to improve patient outcomes.

Finally, we explore two common pediatric conditions: otitis media and nephrotic syndrome. Otitis media, a frequent ear infection, can lead to significant morbidity and hearing loss. Nephrotic syndrome, a kidney disorder characterized by excessive protein loss in the urine, can have a profound impact on a child's overall health.

This compendium is intended to serve as a valuable resource for healthcare professionals, students, and researchers. It is our hope that this work will contribute to the advancement of pediatric and neonatal care, ultimately improving the lives of affected children.

—Editor

Contents

<i>Preface</i>	<i>v</i>
1. Nursing Resuscitation	1
<i>Ms. Vishva Patel</i>	
2. Common Neonatal Problems	15
<i>Ms. Vishva Patel</i>	
3. Turner Syndrome	25
<i>Ms. Vishva Patel</i>	
4. Spina Bifida	42
<i>Mr. Rajkumar</i>	
5. Thalassemia	63
<i>Mr. Rajkumar</i>	
6. Renal Failure	79
<i>Mr. Rajkumar</i>	
7. Patient Safety Indicators	93
<i>Ms. Megha Raval</i>	
8. Otitis Media	98
<i>Ms. Megha Raval</i>	
9. Nephrotic Syndrome	118
<i>Ms. Megha Raval</i>	

3

Turner Syndrome

Ms. Vishva Patel¹

1. DEFINITION

Turner syndrome is a chromosomal disorder that affects females and is characterized by the complete or partial absence of one of the two X chromosomes. This genetic condition leads to a variety of physical and developmental features.

Key Features and Symptoms:

1. Physical Characteristics:

- Short stature
- Low-set ears
- Webbed neck
- Broad chest with widely spaced nipples
- Swelling of hands and feet at birth

2. Reproductive and Hormonal Issues:

- Ovarian insufficiency, which can lead to delayed puberty or infertility
- Primary amenorrhea (absence of menstruation) or irregular periods

3. Cardiovascular Issues:

- Congenital heart defects, such as coarctation of the aorta or bicuspid aortic valve

4. Renal Abnormalities:

- Possible kidney abnormalities, such as horseshoe kidney

1. Nursing Tutor, AION

Neonatal's Nursing

NEONATAL'S NURSING

Editor

Prof. Sejal Patel

SHRADDHA BOOK DISTRIBUTORS
AYODHYA

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Neonatal's Nursing

Editor : Prof. Sejal Patel

Edition : 2021

ISBN : 978-81-932110-5-2

Published by:

Shraddha Book Distributors

Ayodhya 224 001

Exclusive Distributor:

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,

Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,

Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by:

In-house

Preface

This compendium delves into a range of critical health conditions, from the delicate realm of neonatal care to the intricate challenges faced by pediatric patients. Each chapter is meticulously crafted to provide a comprehensive overview, exploring the underlying causes, clinical manifestations, and state-of-the-art management strategies.

We begin by examining common neonatal problems, a crucial area for healthcare providers. Understanding the unique physiological adaptations of newborns is essential for early identification and timely intervention. From respiratory distress syndrome to neonatal jaundice, these conditions can have profound implications for infant health and development.

Subsequently, we turn our attention to specific pediatric disorders. Turner syndrome, a chromosomal condition affecting females, is explored in detail, highlighting its diverse clinical presentation and the importance of early diagnosis and management. Spina bifida, a neural tube defect, and thalassemia, a group of inherited blood disorders, are discussed, emphasizing the need for multidisciplinary care and ongoing support.

The complexities of renal failure in pediatric patients are also addressed. This chapter delves into the various etiologies, diagnostic approaches, and therapeutic interventions, including dialysis and transplantation.

In the realm of patient safety, we examine key patient safety indicators that are crucial for monitoring the quality of care. By understanding these indicators, healthcare providers can identify potential risks and implement strategies to improve patient outcomes.

Finally, we explore two common pediatric conditions: otitis media and nephrotic syndrome. Otitis media, a frequent ear infection, can lead to significant morbidity and hearing loss. Nephrotic syndrome, a kidney disorder characterized by excessive protein loss in the urine, can have a profound impact on a child's overall health.

This compendium is intended to serve as a valuable resource for healthcare professionals, students, and researchers. It is our hope that this work will contribute to the advancement of pediatric and neonatal care, ultimately improving the lives of affected children.

—Editor

Contents

<i>Preface</i>	<i>v</i>
1. Nursing Resuscitation	1
<i>Ms. Vishva Patel</i>	
2. Common Neonatal Problems	15
<i>Ms. Vishva Patel</i>	
3. Turner Syndrome	25
<i>Ms. Vishva Patel</i>	
4. Spina Bifida	42
<i>Mr. Rajkumar</i>	
5. Thalassemia	63
<i>Mr. Rajkumar</i>	
6. Renal Failure	79
<i>Mr. Rajkumar</i>	
7. Patient Safety Indicators	93
<i>Ms. Megha Raval</i>	
8. Otitis Media	98
<i>Ms. Megha Raval</i>	
9. Nephrotic Syndrome	118
<i>Ms. Megha Raval</i>	

4

Spina Bifida

Mr. Rajkumar¹

1. DEFINITION

Spina bifida is a type of neural tube defect (NTD) that occurs during early fetal development. It involves a defect in the formation of the spinal cord and its protective covering, leading to a range of physical and neurological impairments. The condition arises when the neural tube, which forms the spine and surrounding structures, does not close completely during early pregnancy.

2. OBJECTIVES

The objectives of managing spina bifida are focused on optimizing outcomes for affected individuals through a combination of medical, surgical, and supportive interventions. These objectives aim to address the condition's various aspects, including its physical, neurological, and psychosocial impacts. Here's a detailed overview:

1. Early Detection and Diagnosis

- Objective: Ensure early diagnosis of spina bifida through prenatal screening and diagnostic testing.

- Approach: Utilize maternal blood tests (e.g., alpha-fetoprotein levels), detailed ultrasounds, and amniocentesis to identify the condition as early as possible.

1. Nursing Tutor, AION

Neonatal's Nursing

NEONATAL'S NURSING

Editor

Prof. Sejal Patel

SHRADDHA BOOK DISTRIBUTORS
AYODHYA

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Neonatal's Nursing

Editor : Prof. Sejal Patel

Edition : 2021

ISBN : 978-81-932110-5-2

Published by:

Shraddha Book Distributors

Ayodhya 224 001

Exclusive Distributor:

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,

Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,

Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by:

In-house

Preface

This compendium delves into a range of critical health conditions, from the delicate realm of neonatal care to the intricate challenges faced by pediatric patients. Each chapter is meticulously crafted to provide a comprehensive overview, exploring the underlying causes, clinical manifestations, and state-of-the-art management strategies.

We begin by examining common neonatal problems, a crucial area for healthcare providers. Understanding the unique physiological adaptations of newborns is essential for early identification and timely intervention. From respiratory distress syndrome to neonatal jaundice, these conditions can have profound implications for infant health and development.

Subsequently, we turn our attention to specific pediatric disorders. Turner syndrome, a chromosomal condition affecting females, is explored in detail, highlighting its diverse clinical presentation and the importance of early diagnosis and management. Spina bifida, a neural tube defect, and thalassemia, a group of inherited blood disorders, are discussed, emphasizing the need for multidisciplinary care and ongoing support.

The complexities of renal failure in pediatric patients are also addressed. This chapter delves into the various etiologies, diagnostic approaches, and therapeutic interventions, including dialysis and transplantation.

In the realm of patient safety, we examine key patient safety indicators that are crucial for monitoring the quality of care. By understanding these indicators, healthcare providers can identify potential risks and implement strategies to improve patient outcomes.

Finally, we explore two common pediatric conditions: otitis media and nephrotic syndrome. Otitis media, a frequent ear infection, can lead to significant morbidity and hearing loss. Nephrotic syndrome, a kidney disorder characterized by excessive protein loss in the urine, can have a profound impact on a child's overall health.

This compendium is intended to serve as a valuable resource for healthcare professionals, students, and researchers. It is our hope that this work will contribute to the advancement of pediatric and neonatal care, ultimately improving the lives of affected children.

—Editor

Contents

<i>Preface</i>	<i>v</i>
1. Nursing Resuscitation	1
<i>Ms. Vishva Patel</i>	
2. Common Neonatal Problems	15
<i>Ms. Vishva Patel</i>	
3. Turner Syndrome	25
<i>Ms. Vishva Patel</i>	
4. Spina Bifida	42
<i>Mr. Rajkumar</i>	
5. Thalassemia	63
<i>Mr. Rajkumar</i>	
6. Renal Failure	79
<i>Mr. Rajkumar</i>	
7. Patient Safety Indicators	93
<i>Ms. Megha Raval</i>	
8. Otitis Media	98
<i>Ms. Megha Raval</i>	
9. Nephrotic Syndrome	118
<i>Ms. Megha Raval</i>	

5

Thalassemia

Mr. Rajkumar¹

1. DEFINITION

Thalassemia is a group of inherited blood disorders characterized by the production of abnormal hemoglobin, which impairs the blood's ability to carry oxygen effectively. Hemoglobin is the protein in red blood cells that binds oxygen and delivers it to tissues throughout the body.

2. OBJECTIVE

The primary objectives related to thalassemia are:

1. Early Diagnosis and Screening: Identify individuals with thalassemia or at risk of carrying the trait early, often through genetic testing or newborn screening programs. Early diagnosis helps in managing the condition more effectively and preventing complications.
2. Management and Treatment: Provide appropriate treatment to manage symptoms and complications. This may include regular blood transfusions, iron chelation therapy to prevent iron overload, and folic acid supplementation. For severe cases, bone marrow or stem cell transplants may be considered.
3. Genetic Counseling: Offer genetic counseling to individuals and families to understand the inheritance patterns of thalassemia, assess the risk for future children, and make informed reproductive decisions.

1. Nursing Tutor, AION

Neonatal's Nursing

NEONATAL'S NURSING

Editor

Prof. Sejal Patel

**SHRADDHA BOOK DISTRIBUTORS
AYODHYA**

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Neonatal's Nursing

Editor : Prof. Sejal Patel

Edition : 2021

ISBN : 978-81-932110-5-2

Published by:

Shraddha Book Distributors

Ayodhya 224 001

Exclusive Distributor:

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,

Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,

Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by:

In-house

Preface

This compendium delves into a range of critical health conditions, from the delicate realm of neonatal care to the intricate challenges faced by pediatric patients. Each chapter is meticulously crafted to provide a comprehensive overview, exploring the underlying causes, clinical manifestations, and state-of-the-art management strategies.

We begin by examining common neonatal problems, a crucial area for healthcare providers. Understanding the unique physiological adaptations of newborns is essential for early identification and timely intervention. From respiratory distress syndrome to neonatal jaundice, these conditions can have profound implications for infant health and development.

Subsequently, we turn our attention to specific pediatric disorders. Turner syndrome, a chromosomal condition affecting females, is explored in detail, highlighting its diverse clinical presentation and the importance of early diagnosis and management. Spina bifida, a neural tube defect, and thalassemia, a group of inherited blood disorders, are discussed, emphasizing the need for multidisciplinary care and ongoing support.

The complexities of renal failure in pediatric patients are also addressed. This chapter delves into the various etiologies, diagnostic approaches, and therapeutic interventions, including dialysis and transplantation.

In the realm of patient safety, we examine key patient safety indicators that are crucial for monitoring the quality of care. By understanding these indicators, healthcare providers can identify potential risks and implement strategies to improve patient outcomes.

Finally, we explore two common pediatric conditions: otitis media and nephrotic syndrome. Otitis media, a frequent ear infection, can lead to significant morbidity and hearing loss. Nephrotic syndrome, a kidney disorder characterized by excessive protein loss in the urine, can have a profound impact on a child's overall health.

This compendium is intended to serve as a valuable resource for healthcare professionals, students, and researchers. It is our hope that this work will contribute to the advancement of pediatric and neonatal care, ultimately improving the lives of affected children.

—Editor

Contents

<i>Preface</i>	<i>v</i>
1. Nursing Resuscitation	1
<i>Ms. Vishva Patel</i>	
2. Common Neonatal Problems	15
<i>Ms. Vishva Patel</i>	
3. Turner Syndrome	25
<i>Ms. Vishva Patel</i>	
4. Spina Bifida	42
<i>Mr. Rajkumar</i>	
5. Thalassemia	63
<i>Mr. Rajkumar</i>	
6. Renal Failure	79
<i>Mr. Rajkumar</i>	
7. Patient Safety Indicators	93
<i>Ms. Megha Raval</i>	
8. Otitis Media	98
<i>Ms. Megha Raval</i>	
9. Nephrotic Syndrome	118
<i>Ms. Megha Raval</i>	

6

Renal Failure

Mr. Rajkumar¹

1. DEFINITION

Renal failure in pediatric patients refers to a condition in which the kidneys are unable to perform their normal functions effectively. In children, renal failure can be categorized into two main types: acute renal failure (ARF) and chronic renal failure (CRF).

2. ETIOLOGY

The etiology of renal failure in pediatric patients can be diverse, encompassing both congenital and acquired causes. For acute renal failure (ARF), common causes include severe dehydration, acute glomerulonephritis, urinary tract obstruction, infections, and exposure to nephrotoxins. For chronic renal failure (CRF), causes often involve congenital anomalies like renal dysplasia, genetic disorders (e.g., polycystic kidney disease), chronic glomerulonephritis, or long-standing conditions like hypertension or diabetes. Understanding the specific cause is crucial for appropriate treatment and management.

Renal failure in pediatric patients refers to a condition in which the kidneys are unable to perform their normal functions effectively. In children, renal failure

1. Nursing Tutor, AION

Neonatal's Nursing

NEONATAL'S NURSING

Editor

Prof. Sejal Patel

**SHRADDHA BOOK DISTRIBUTORS
AYODHYA**

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Neonatal's Nursing

Editor : Prof. Sejal Patel

Edition : 2021

ISBN : 978-81-932110-5-2

Published by:

Shraddha Book Distributors

Ayodhya 224 001

Exclusive Distributor:

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,

Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,

Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by:

In-house

Preface

This compendium delves into a range of critical health conditions, from the delicate realm of neonatal care to the intricate challenges faced by pediatric patients. Each chapter is meticulously crafted to provide a comprehensive overview, exploring the underlying causes, clinical manifestations, and state-of-the-art management strategies.

We begin by examining common neonatal problems, a crucial area for healthcare providers. Understanding the unique physiological adaptations of newborns is essential for early identification and timely intervention. From respiratory distress syndrome to neonatal jaundice, these conditions can have profound implications for infant health and development.

Subsequently, we turn our attention to specific pediatric disorders. Turner syndrome, a chromosomal condition affecting females, is explored in detail, highlighting its diverse clinical presentation and the importance of early diagnosis and management. Spina bifida, a neural tube defect, and thalassemia, a group of inherited blood disorders, are discussed, emphasizing the need for multidisciplinary care and ongoing support.

The complexities of renal failure in pediatric patients are also addressed. This chapter delves into the various etiologies, diagnostic approaches, and therapeutic interventions, including dialysis and transplantation.

In the realm of patient safety, we examine key patient safety indicators that are crucial for monitoring the quality of care. By understanding these indicators, healthcare providers can identify potential risks and implement strategies to improve patient outcomes.

Finally, we explore two common pediatric conditions: otitis media and nephrotic syndrome. Otitis media, a frequent ear infection, can lead to significant morbidity and hearing loss. Nephrotic syndrome, a kidney disorder characterized by excessive protein loss in the urine, can have a profound impact on a child's overall health.

This compendium is intended to serve as a valuable resource for healthcare professionals, students, and researchers. It is our hope that this work will contribute to the advancement of pediatric and neonatal care, ultimately improving the lives of affected children.

—Editor

Contents

<i>Preface</i>	<i>v</i>
1. Nursing Resuscitation	1
<i>Ms. Vishva Patel</i>	
2. Common Neonatal Problems	15
<i>Ms. Vishva Patel</i>	
3. Turner Syndrome	25
<i>Ms. Vishva Patel</i>	
4. Spina Bifida	42
<i>Mr. Rajkumar</i>	
5. Thalassemia	63
<i>Mr. Rajkumar</i>	
6. Renal Failure	79
<i>Mr. Rajkumar</i>	
7. Patient Safety Indicators	93
<i>Ms. Megha Raval</i>	
8. Otitis Media	98
<i>Ms. Megha Raval</i>	
9. Nephrotic Syndrome	118
<i>Ms. Megha Raval</i>	

Patient Safety Indicators

Ms. Megha Raval¹



□ Vulnerable patients.:-

A patient who is or may be for any reason unable to protect and take care of him or herself. Such patients are prone to various risks within the hospital, such as fall, injury, neglect, abuse, medical errors and acquiring of infections. Vulnerable patient requires special care.

⊙ List of vulnerable category:-

1. Nursing Tutor, AION

Neonatal's Nursing

NEONATAL'S NURSING

Editor

Prof. Sejal Patel

**SHRADDHA BOOK DISTRIBUTORS
AYODHYA**

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Neonatal's Nursing

Editor : Prof. Sejal Patel

Edition : 2021

ISBN : 978-81-932110-5-2

Published by:

Shraddha Book Distributors

Ayodhya 224 001

Exclusive Distributor:

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,

Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,

Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by:

In-house

Preface

This compendium delves into a range of critical health conditions, from the delicate realm of neonatal care to the intricate challenges faced by pediatric patients. Each chapter is meticulously crafted to provide a comprehensive overview, exploring the underlying causes, clinical manifestations, and state-of-the-art management strategies.

We begin by examining common neonatal problems, a crucial area for healthcare providers. Understanding the unique physiological adaptations of newborns is essential for early identification and timely intervention. From respiratory distress syndrome to neonatal jaundice, these conditions can have profound implications for infant health and development.

Subsequently, we turn our attention to specific pediatric disorders. Turner syndrome, a chromosomal condition affecting females, is explored in detail, highlighting its diverse clinical presentation and the importance of early diagnosis and management. Spina bifida, a neural tube defect, and thalassemia, a group of inherited blood disorders, are discussed, emphasizing the need for multidisciplinary care and ongoing support.

The complexities of renal failure in pediatric patients are also addressed. This chapter delves into the various etiologies, diagnostic approaches, and therapeutic interventions, including dialysis and transplantation.

In the realm of patient safety, we examine key patient safety indicators that are crucial for monitoring the quality of care. By understanding these indicators, healthcare providers can identify potential risks and implement strategies to improve patient outcomes.

Finally, we explore two common pediatric conditions: otitis media and nephrotic syndrome. Otitis media, a frequent ear infection, can lead to significant morbidity and hearing loss. Nephrotic syndrome, a kidney disorder characterized by excessive protein loss in the urine, can have a profound impact on a child's overall health.

This compendium is intended to serve as a valuable resource for healthcare professionals, students, and researchers. It is our hope that this work will contribute to the advancement of pediatric and neonatal care, ultimately improving the lives of affected children.

—Editor

Contents

<i>Preface</i>	<i>v</i>
1. Nursing Resuscitation	1
<i>Ms. Vishva Patel</i>	
2. Common Neonatal Problems	15
<i>Ms. Vishva Patel</i>	
3. Turner Syndrome	25
<i>Ms. Vishva Patel</i>	
4. Spina Bifida	42
<i>Mr. Rajkumar</i>	
5. Thalassemia	63
<i>Mr. Rajkumar</i>	
6. Renal Failure	79
<i>Mr. Rajkumar</i>	
7. Patient Safety Indicators	93
<i>Ms. Megha Raval</i>	
8. Otitis Media	98
<i>Ms. Megha Raval</i>	
9. Nephrotic Syndrome	118
<i>Ms. Megha Raval</i>	

1. DEFINITION

Otitis Media (OM) in pediatric patients refers to the inflammation or infection of the middle ear, which is the area behind the eardrum. This condition is characterized by the accumulation of fluid in the middle ear, which can be accompanied by infection. Otitis media can result in a range of symptoms and complications, affecting hearing and overall well-being.

2. OBJECTIVES

The objectives of managing Otitis Media (OM) in pediatric patients are aimed at alleviating symptoms, addressing the underlying cause, preventing complications, and minimizing the impact on the child's overall health and development. Here are the key objectives:

1. Symptom Relief

- **Pain Management:** Alleviate ear pain and discomfort through appropriate medications such as analgesics (e.g., acetaminophen or ibuprofen) and, when necessary, topical treatments.

- **Fever Reduction:** Manage fever using antipyretics to ensure comfort and prevent dehydration.

2. Eradication of Infection

- **Antibiotic Therapy:** For bacterial acute otitis media (AOM), prescribe antibiotics based on clinical guidelines and local resistance patterns to effectively treat the infection.

1. Nursing Tutor, AION

Neonatal's Nursing

NEONATAL'S NURSING

Editor

Prof. Sejal Patel

SHRADDHA BOOK DISTRIBUTORS
AYODHYA

Disclaimer: All the views expressed and content written in this book are of the Author; the publisher assumes no responsibility or liability for the originality of any information and for the content contained in the book or the views expressed in the book.

© Publisher

This book, or any part thereof must not be reproduced or reprinted in any form, whatsoever, without the written permission of the Author, except for the purpose of references and review.

Title : Neonatal's Nursing

Editor : Prof. Sejal Patel

Edition : 2021

ISBN : 978-81-932110-5-2

Published by:

Shraddha Book Distributors

Ayodhya 224 001

Exclusive Distributor:

Blue Ink International Publishers & Distributors

1/11137, Top Floor, Lane No. 10,

Near Kirti Mandir, Subhash Park,

Shahdara, Delhi - 110 032

E-mail: blueinkipd2021@gmail.com

Printed by:

In-house

Preface

This compendium delves into a range of critical health conditions, from the delicate realm of neonatal care to the intricate challenges faced by pediatric patients. Each chapter is meticulously crafted to provide a comprehensive overview, exploring the underlying causes, clinical manifestations, and state-of-the-art management strategies.

We begin by examining common neonatal problems, a crucial area for healthcare providers. Understanding the unique physiological adaptations of newborns is essential for early identification and timely intervention. From respiratory distress syndrome to neonatal jaundice, these conditions can have profound implications for infant health and development.

Subsequently, we turn our attention to specific pediatric disorders. Turner syndrome, a chromosomal condition affecting females, is explored in detail, highlighting its diverse clinical presentation and the importance of early diagnosis and management. Spina bifida, a neural tube defect, and thalassemia, a group of inherited blood disorders, are discussed, emphasizing the need for multidisciplinary care and ongoing support.

The complexities of renal failure in pediatric patients are also addressed. This chapter delves into the various etiologies, diagnostic approaches, and therapeutic interventions, including dialysis and transplantation.

In the realm of patient safety, we examine key patient safety indicators that are crucial for monitoring the quality of care. By understanding these indicators, healthcare providers can identify potential risks and implement strategies to improve patient outcomes.

Finally, we explore two common pediatric conditions: otitis media and nephrotic syndrome. Otitis media, a frequent ear infection, can lead to significant morbidity and hearing loss. Nephrotic syndrome, a kidney disorder characterized by excessive protein loss in the urine, can have a profound impact on a child's overall health.

This compendium is intended to serve as a valuable resource for healthcare professionals, students, and researchers. It is our hope that this work will contribute to the advancement of pediatric and neonatal care, ultimately improving the lives of affected children.

—Editor

Contents

<i>Preface</i>	<i>v</i>
1. Nursing Resuscitation	1
<i>Ms. Vishva Patel</i>	
2. Common Neonatal Problems	15
<i>Ms. Vishva Patel</i>	
3. Turner Syndrome	25
<i>Ms. Vishva Patel</i>	
4. Spina Bifida	42
<i>Mr. Rajkumar</i>	
5. Thalassemia	63
<i>Mr. Rajkumar</i>	
6. Renal Failure	79
<i>Mr. Rajkumar</i>	
7. Patient Safety Indicators	93
<i>Ms. Megha Raval</i>	
8. Otitis Media	98
<i>Ms. Megha Raval</i>	
9. Nephrotic Syndrome	118
<i>Ms. Megha Raval</i>	

9

Nephrotic Syndrome

Ms. Megha Raval¹

1. DEFINITION:-

Nephrotic Syndrome in pediatrics is defined as a clinical condition with the following hallmark features:

1. Proteinuria:

- Persistent and significant loss of protein in the urine, typically exceeding 40 mg/m²/hour or 3.5 grams per day in an adult. In children, it is usually assessed through urine protein-to-creatinine ratio or 24-hour urine collection.

2. Hypoalbuminemia:

- Low levels of albumin (a major protein in the blood) resulting from its loss through the kidneys. This often leads to a serum albumin level below 2.5 g/dL.

3. Edema:

- Swelling caused by fluid accumulation in tissues, often starting in the lower extremities and potentially progressing to involve the entire body (generalized edema).

4. Hyperlipidemia:

- Elevated levels of lipids (fats) in the blood, including cholesterol and triglycerides, as a compensatory response to the loss of proteins.

2. OBJECTIVES:-

The objectives of managing nephrotic syndrome in pediatric patients are centered around achieving clinical

1. Nursing Tutor, AION

1

Nursing Resuscitation

Ms. Vishva Patel¹

INTRODUCTION

Hypoxic arrest is the most common cause of cardiac arrest in infants, children and adolescents. It is the end result of progressive tissue hypoxia and acidosis caused by respiratory failure or hypotensive shock. Regardless of the initiating event or disease process, the final common pathway preceding cardiac arrest is cardiopulmonary failure. It is important for all health workers caring for children to know about the fundamental steps in resuscitation and be prepared to implement resuscitation on an immediate basis. The goal of pediatric resuscitation is to maintain adequate oxygenation and perfusion of blood throughout the body while steps are taken to stabilize the child.

Survival Rates from Pediatric Cardiac Arrest: Survival rates vary according to the location of the arrest and the presenting rhythm. Survival is higher if the arrest occurs in hospital (43%) compared with out of hospital (8%). Intact neurologic survival is also much higher if the arrest occurs in hospital. Basic life support (BLS) emphasizes immediate provision of bystander CPR.

Objectives

- To be able to give efficient pediatric BLS
- To be able to provide efficient Pediatric advanced life support
- To be able to identify different cardiac rhythms.

1. Nursing Tutor, AION

2

Common Neonatal Problems

Ms. Vishva Patel¹

INTRODUCTION

Majority of newborn babies do not develop any serious disorders and they need routine newborn care which can be provided by the mothers under nurse's supervision. High risk mothers are likely to give birth to preterm or low birth weight babies who are prone to suffer from a number of disorders. Common causes of morbidity in newborn babies include hypoglycemia, shock, RDS, jaundice, neonatal sepsis, and neonatal seizures. Most neonatal disorders are limited to preterm and low birth weight babies. In this unit, common neonatal disorders such as hypoglycemia, RDS, shock, jaundice, neonatal sepsis, neonatal seizures and monitoring of sick neonate are being discussed. Hence you will learn about the definition, causes, pathogenesis, types, signs and symptoms, diagnosis and management of these disorders. You will also learn about how to monitor a sick neonate.

HYPOGLYCEMIA

Definition: Hypoglycemia is defined as a blood glucose level of less than 45 mg/dl in all newborns. Low birth weight and sick neonates are prone to develop low blood sugar which increases morbidity and mortality. It is important to monitor, diagnose and treat hypoglycemia early for a favorable outcome.

Neonates at Risk:-

1. Nursing Tutor, AION

3

Turner Syndrome

Ms. Vishva Patel¹

1. DEFINITION

Turner syndrome is a chromosomal disorder that affects females and is characterized by the complete or partial absence of one of the two X chromosomes. This genetic condition leads to a variety of physical and developmental features.

Key Features and Symptoms:

1. Physical Characteristics:

- Short stature
- Low-set ears
- Webbed neck
- Broad chest with widely spaced nipples
- Swelling of hands and feet at birth

2. Reproductive and Hormonal Issues:

- Ovarian insufficiency, which can lead to delayed puberty or infertility
- Primary amenorrhea (absence of menstruation) or irregular periods

3. Cardiovascular Issues:

- Congenital heart defects, such as coarctation of the aorta or bicuspid aortic valve

4. Renal Abnormalities:

- Possible kidney abnormalities, such as horseshoe kidney

1. Nursing Tutor, AION

1. DEFINITION

Spina bifida is a type of neural tube defect (NTD) that occurs during early fetal development. It involves a defect in the formation of the spinal cord and its protective covering, leading to a range of physical and neurological impairments. The condition arises when the neural tube, which forms the spine and surrounding structures, does not close completely during early pregnancy.

2. OBJECTIVES

The objectives of managing spina bifida are focused on optimizing outcomes for affected individuals through a combination of medical, surgical, and supportive interventions. These objectives aim to address the condition's various aspects, including its physical, neurological, and psychosocial impacts. Here's a detailed overview:

1. Early Detection and Diagnosis

- Objective: Ensure early diagnosis of spina bifida through prenatal screening and diagnostic testing.

- Approach: Utilize maternal blood tests (e.g., alpha-fetoprotein levels), detailed ultrasounds, and amniocentesis to identify the condition as early as possible.

1. Nursing Tutor, AION

5

Thalassemia

Mr. Rajkumar¹

1. DEFINITION

Thalassemia is a group of inherited blood disorders characterized by the production of abnormal hemoglobin, which impairs the blood's ability to carry oxygen effectively. Hemoglobin is the protein in red blood cells that binds oxygen and delivers it to tissues throughout the body.

2. OBJECTIVE

The primary objectives related to thalassemia are:

1. Early Diagnosis and Screening: Identify individuals with thalassemia or at risk of carrying the trait early, often through genetic testing or newborn screening programs. Early diagnosis helps in managing the condition more effectively and preventing complications.
2. Management and Treatment: Provide appropriate treatment to manage symptoms and complications. This may include regular blood transfusions, iron chelation therapy to prevent iron overload, and folic acid supplementation. For severe cases, bone marrow or stem cell transplants may be considered.
3. Genetic Counseling: Offer genetic counseling to individuals and families to understand the inheritance patterns of thalassemia, assess the risk for future children, and make informed reproductive decisions.

1. Nursing Tutor, AION

6

Renal Failure

Mr. Rajkumar¹

1. DEFINITION

Renal failure in pediatric patients refers to a condition in which the kidneys are unable to perform their normal functions effectively. In children, renal failure can be categorized into two main types: acute renal failure (ARF) and chronic renal failure (CRF).

2. ETIOLOGY

The etiology of renal failure in pediatric patients can be diverse, encompassing both congenital and acquired causes. For acute renal failure (ARF), common causes include severe dehydration, acute glomerulonephritis, urinary tract obstruction, infections, and exposure to nephrotoxins. For chronic renal failure (CRF), causes often involve congenital anomalies like renal dysplasia, genetic disorders (e.g., polycystic kidney disease), chronic glomerulonephritis, or long-standing conditions like hypertension or diabetes. Understanding the specific cause is crucial for appropriate treatment and management.

Renal failure in pediatric patients refers to a condition in which the kidneys are unable to perform their normal functions effectively. In children, renal failure

1. Nursing Tutor, AION

Patient Safety Indicators

Ms. Megha Raval¹



□ Vulnerable patients.:-

A patient who is or may be for any reason unable to protect and take care of him or herself. Such patients are prone to various risks within the hospital, such as fall, injury, neglect, abuse, medical errors and acquiring of infections. Vulnerable patient requires special care.

⊙ List of vulnerable category:-

1. Nursing Tutor, AION

1. DEFINITION

Otitis Media (OM) in pediatric patients refers to the inflammation or infection of the middle ear, which is the area behind the eardrum. This condition is characterized by the accumulation of fluid in the middle ear, which can be accompanied by infection. Otitis media can result in a range of symptoms and complications, affecting hearing and overall well-being.

2. OBJECTIVES

The objectives of managing Otitis Media (OM) in pediatric patients are aimed at alleviating symptoms, addressing the underlying cause, preventing complications, and minimizing the impact on the child's overall health and development. Here are the key objectives:

1. Symptom Relief

- **Pain Management:** Alleviate ear pain and discomfort through appropriate medications such as analgesics (e.g., acetaminophen or ibuprofen) and, when necessary, topical treatments.

- **Fever Reduction:** Manage fever using antipyretics to ensure comfort and prevent dehydration.

2. Eradication of Infection

- **Antibiotic Therapy:** For bacterial acute otitis media (AOM), prescribe antibiotics based on clinical guidelines and local resistance patterns to effectively treat the infection.

1. Nursing Tutor, AION

9

Nephrotic Syndrome

Ms. Megha Raval¹

1. DEFINITION:-

Nephrotic Syndrome in pediatrics is defined as a clinical condition with the following hallmark features:

1. Proteinuria:

- Persistent and significant loss of protein in the urine, typically exceeding 40 mg/m²/hour or 3.5 grams per day in an adult. In children, it is usually assessed through urine protein-to-creatinine ratio or 24-hour urine collection.

2. Hypoalbuminemia:

- Low levels of albumin (a major protein in the blood) resulting from its loss through the kidneys. This often leads to a serum albumin level below 2.5 g/dL.

3. Edema:

- Swelling caused by fluid accumulation in tissues, often starting in the lower extremities and potentially progressing to involve the entire body (generalized edema).

4. Hyperlipidemia:

- Elevated levels of lipids (fats) in the blood, including cholesterol and triglycerides, as a compensatory response to the loss of proteins.

2. OBJECTIVES:-

The objectives of managing nephrotic syndrome in pediatric patients are centered around achieving clinical

1. Nursing Tutor, AION